# M. Sc. MATHEMATICS <br> MAL-521 <br> <br> (ADVANCE ABSTRACT ALGEBRA) 

 <br> <br> (ADVANCE ABSTRACT ALGEBRA)}

| Lesson No \&Lesson Name | Writer | Vetter |
| :--- | :--- | :---: |
| 1 Linear Transformations | Dr. Pankaj Kumar | Dr. Nawneet Hooda |
| 2 Canonical Transformations | Dr. Pankaj Kumar | Dr. Nawneet Hooda |
| 3 Modules I | Dr. Pankaj Kumar | Dr. Nawneet Hooda |
| 4 Modules II | Dr. Pankaj Kumar | Dr. Nawneet Hooda |



DIRECTORATE OF DISTANCE EDUCATIONS

MAL-521: M. Sc. Mathematics (Algebra)
Written by Dr. Pankaj Kumar
Lesson: Linear Transformations

Vetted by Dr. Nawneet Hooda

## STRUCTURE

### 1.0 OBJECTIVE

### 1.1 INTRODUCTION

### 1.2 LINEAR TRANSFORMATIONS

1.3 ALGEBRA OF LINEAR TRANSFORMATIONS
1.4 CHARACTERISTIC ROOTS
1.5 CHARACTERISTIC VECTORS
1.6 MATRIX OF TRANSFORMATION
1.7 SIMILAR TRANSFORMATIONS
1.8 CANONICAL FORM(TRIANGULAR FORM)
1.9 KEY WORDS
1.10 SUMMARY
1.11 SELF ASSESMENT QUESTIONS
1.12 SUGGESTED READINGS

### 1.0 OBJECTIVE

Objective of this Chapter is to study Linear Transformation on the finite dimensional vector space V over the field F .

### 1.1 INTRODUCTION

Let U and V be two given finite dimensional vector spaces over the same field F. Our interest is to find a relation (generally called as linear transformation) between the elements of U and V which satisfies certain conditions and, how this relation from U to V becomes a vector space over the field F. The set of all transformation on $U$ into itself is of much interest. On finite dimensional vector space V over F , for given basis of V , there always exist a matrix and for given basis and given matrix of order n there always exist a linear transformation.

In this Chapter, in Section 1.2, we study about linear transformations. In Section 1.3, Algebra of linear transformations is studied. In next two
sections characteristic roots and characteristic vectors of linear transformations are studied. In Section 1.6, matrix of transformation is studied. In Section 1.7 canonical transformations are studied and in last section we come to know about canonical form (Triangular form).

### 1.2 LINEAR TRANSFORMATIONS

1.2.1 Definition. Vector Space. Let F be a field. A non empty set V with two binary operations, addition (+)and scalar multiplications( $\cdot$ ), is called a vector space over F if V is an abelian group under + and for $\mathrm{v} \in \mathrm{V}, \alpha . \mathrm{v} \in \mathrm{V}$. The following conditions are also satisfied:
(1) $\alpha .(\mathrm{v}+\mathrm{w})=\alpha \mathrm{v}+\alpha \mathrm{w}$ for all $\alpha \in \mathrm{F}$ and $\mathrm{v}, \mathrm{w}$ in V ,
(2) $(\alpha+\beta) \cdot v=\alpha v+\beta v$,
(3) $(\alpha \beta) \cdot v=\alpha \cdot(\beta v)$
(4) $1 . v=v$

For all $\alpha, \beta \in \mathrm{F}$ and v , w belonging to V . Here v and w are called vectors and $\alpha, \beta$ are called scalar.
1.2.2 Definition. Homomorphism. Let V and W are two vector space over the same field F then the mapping T from V into W is called homomorphism if
(i) $\quad\left(v_{1}+v_{2}\right) T=v_{1} T+v_{2} T$
(ii) $\quad\left(\alpha v_{1}\right) \mathrm{T}=\alpha\left(\mathrm{v}_{1} \mathrm{~T}\right)$
for all $\mathrm{v}_{1}, \mathrm{v}_{2}$ belonging to V and $\alpha$ belonging to F .
Above two conditions are equivalent to $\left(\alpha v_{1}+\beta v_{2}\right) T=\alpha\left(v_{1} T\right)+\beta\left(v_{2} T\right)$.
If T is one-one and onto mapping from V to W , then T is called an isomorphism and the two spaces are isomorphic. Set of all homomorphism from V to W is denoted by $\operatorname{Hom}(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{W})$ or $\operatorname{Hom}_{\mathrm{R}}(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{W})$
1.2.3 Definition. Let $S$ and $T \in \operatorname{Hom}(V, W)$, then $S+T$ and $\lambda S$ is defined as:
(i) $v(S+T)=v S+v T$ and
(ii) $v(\lambda S)=\lambda(v S)$ for all $v \in V$ and $\lambda \in F$
1.2.4 Problem. $\mathrm{S}+\mathrm{T}$ and $\lambda \mathrm{S}$ are elements of $\operatorname{Hom}(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{W})$ i.e. $\mathrm{S}+\mathrm{T}$ and $\lambda \mathrm{S}$ are homomorphisms from V to W .

Proof. For (i) we have to show that

$$
(\alpha \mathrm{u}+\beta \mathrm{v})(\mathrm{S}+\mathrm{T})=\alpha(\mathrm{u}(\mathrm{~S}+\mathrm{T}))+\beta(\mathrm{v}(\mathrm{~S}+\mathrm{T}))
$$

By Definition 1.2.3, $(\alpha u+\beta v)(S+T)=(\alpha u+\beta v) S+(\alpha u+\beta v) T$. Since $S$ and $T$ are linear transformations, therefore,

$$
\begin{aligned}
(\alpha \mathrm{u}+\beta \mathrm{v})(\mathrm{S}+\mathrm{T}) & =\alpha(\mathrm{uS})+\beta(\mathrm{vS})+\alpha(\mathrm{uT})+\beta(\mathrm{vT}) \\
& =\alpha((\mathrm{uS})+\alpha(\mathrm{uT}))+\beta((\mathrm{vS})+(\mathrm{vT}))
\end{aligned}
$$

Again by definition 1.2.3, we get that $(\alpha u+\beta v)(S+T)=\alpha(u(S+T))+\beta(v(S+T))$. It proves the result.
(ii) Similarly we can show that $(\alpha u+\beta v)(\lambda S)=\alpha(u(\lambda S))+\beta(v(\lambda S))$ i.e. $\lambda S$ is also linear transformation.
1.2.5 Theorem. Prove that $\operatorname{Hom}(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{W})$ becomes a vector space under the two operation operations $v(S+T)=v S+v T$ and $v(\lambda S)=\lambda(v S)$ for all $v \in V, \lambda \in F$ and $\mathrm{S}, \mathrm{T} \in \operatorname{Hom}(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{W})$.
Proof. As it is clear that both operations are binary operations on $\operatorname{Hom}(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{W})$. We will show that under $+\operatorname{Hom}(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{W})$ becomes an abelian group. As $0 \in \operatorname{Hom}(\mathrm{~V}, \mathrm{~W})$ such that $\mathrm{v} 0=0 \forall \mathrm{v} \in \mathrm{V}($ it is call zero transformation $)$, therefore, $\mathrm{v}(\mathrm{S}+0)=\mathrm{vS}+\mathrm{v} 0=\mathrm{vS}=0+\mathrm{vS}=\mathrm{v} 0+\mathrm{vS}=\mathrm{v}(0+\mathrm{S}) \forall \mathrm{v} \in \mathrm{V}$ i.e. identity element exists in $\operatorname{Hom}(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{W})$. Further for $\mathrm{S} \in \operatorname{Hom}(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{W})$, there exist $-\mathrm{S} \in \operatorname{Hom}(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{W})$ such that $v(S+(-S))=v S+v(-S)=v S-v S=0=v 0 \forall v \in V$ i.e. $S+(-S)=0$. Hence inverse of every element exist in $\operatorname{Hom}(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{W})$. It is easy to see that $T_{1}+\left(T_{2}+T_{3}\right)=\left(T_{1}+T_{2}\right)+T_{3}$ and $T_{1}+T_{2}=T_{2}+T_{1} \forall T_{1}, T_{2}, T_{3} \in \operatorname{Hom}(V, W)$. Hence $\operatorname{Hom}(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{W})$ is an abelian group under + .

Further it is easy to see that for all $\mathrm{S}, \mathrm{T} \in \operatorname{Hom}(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{W})$ and $\alpha, \beta \in \mathrm{F}$, we have $\alpha(S+T)=\alpha S+\alpha T,(\alpha+\beta) S=\alpha S+\beta S,(\alpha \beta) S=\alpha(\beta S)$ and 1.S=S. It proves that $\operatorname{Hom}(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{W})$ is a vector space over F .
1.2.6 Theorem. If $V$ and $W$ are vector spaces over $F$ of dimensions $m$ and $n$ respectively, then $\operatorname{Hom}(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{W})$ is of dimension mn over F .
Proof. Since V and W are vector spaces over F of dimensions $m$ and $n$ respectively, let $\mathrm{v}_{1}, \mathrm{v}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{m}}$ be basis of V over F and $\mathrm{w}_{1}, \mathrm{w}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{w}_{\mathrm{n}}$ be basis
of W over F . Since $\mathrm{v}=\delta_{1} \mathrm{v}_{1}+\delta_{2} \mathrm{v}_{2}+\ldots+\delta_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{m}}$ where $\delta_{\mathrm{i}} \in \mathrm{F}$ are uniquely determined for $\mathrm{v} \in \mathrm{V}$. Let us define $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{ij}}$ from V to W by

$$
v_{i} T_{i j}=\delta_{i} w_{j} \text { i.e. } v_{i} T_{k j}=\left\{\begin{array}{ll}
w_{j} & \text { if } i=k \\
0 & \text { if } i \neq k
\end{array} \text {. It is easy to see that } T_{i j}\right.
$$

$\in \operatorname{Hom}(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{W})$. Now we will show that mn elements $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{ij}} 1 \leq \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{m}$ and $1 \leq \mathrm{j} \leq \mathrm{n}$ form the basis for $\operatorname{Hom}(V, W)$. Take

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \beta_{11} \mathrm{~T}_{11}+\beta_{12} \mathrm{~T}_{12}+\ldots+\beta_{1 \mathrm{n}} \mathrm{~T}_{1 \mathrm{n}}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{i} 1} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{i} 1}+\beta_{\mathrm{i} 2} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{i} 2}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{in}} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{in}}+ \\
& \ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{m} 1} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{m} 1}+\beta_{\mathrm{m} 2} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{m} 2}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{mn}} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{mn}}=0
\end{aligned}
$$

(Since a linear transformation on V can be determined completely if image of every basis element of it is determined)

$$
\begin{gathered}
\Rightarrow \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}}\left(\beta_{11} \mathrm{~T}_{11}+\beta_{12} \mathrm{~T}_{12}+\ldots+\beta_{1 \mathrm{n}} \mathrm{~T}_{1 \mathrm{n}}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{i} 1} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{i} 1}+\beta_{\mathrm{i} 2} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{i} 2}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{in}} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{in}}+\right. \\
\left.\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{m} 1} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{m} 1}+\beta_{\mathrm{m} 2} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{m} 2}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{mn}} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{mn}}\right)=\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} 0=0 \\
\Rightarrow \beta_{\mathrm{i} 1} \mathrm{w}_{1}+\beta_{\mathrm{i} 2} \mathrm{w}_{2}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{in}} \mathrm{w}_{\mathrm{n}}=0\left(\therefore \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{kj}}=\left\{\begin{array}{cc}
\mathrm{w}_{\mathrm{j}} & \text { if } \mathrm{i}=\mathrm{k} \\
0 & \text { if } \mathrm{i} \neq \mathrm{k}
\end{array}\right)\right.
\end{gathered}
$$

But $w_{1}, w_{2}, \ldots, w_{n}$ are linearly independent over $F$, therefore, $\beta_{\mathrm{i} 1}=\beta_{\mathrm{i} 2}=\ldots=\beta_{\mathrm{in}}=0$. Ranging i in $1 \leq \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{m}$, we get each $\beta_{\mathrm{ij}}=0$. Hence $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{ij}}$ are linearly independent over F. Now we claim that every element of $\operatorname{Hom}(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{W})$ is linear combination of $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{ij}}$ over F . Let $\mathrm{S} \in \operatorname{Hom}(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{W})$ such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{v}_{1} \mathrm{~S}=\alpha_{11} \mathrm{w}_{1}+\alpha_{12} \mathrm{w}_{2}+\ldots+\alpha_{1 \mathrm{n}} \mathrm{w}_{\mathrm{n}} \\
& \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{~S}=\alpha_{\mathrm{i} 1} \mathrm{w}_{1}+\alpha_{\mathrm{i} 2} \mathrm{w}_{2}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{in}} \mathrm{w}_{\mathrm{n}} \\
& \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{~S}=\alpha_{\mathrm{m} 1} \mathrm{w}_{1}+\alpha_{\mathrm{m} 2} \mathrm{w}_{2}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{mn}} \mathrm{w}_{\mathrm{n}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Take $\mathrm{S}_{0}=\alpha_{11} \mathrm{~T}_{11}+\alpha_{12} \mathrm{~T}_{12}+\ldots+\alpha_{1 \mathrm{n}} \mathrm{T}_{1 \mathrm{n}}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{i} 1} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{i} 1}+\alpha_{\mathrm{i} 2} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{i} 2}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{in}} \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{in}}+$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \quad \alpha_{\mathrm{m} 1} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{m} 1}+\alpha_{\mathrm{m} 2} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{m} 2}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{mn}} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{mn}} . \text { Then } \\
& \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{~S}_{0}=\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}}\left(\alpha_{11} \mathrm{~T}_{11}+\alpha_{12} \mathrm{~T}_{12}+\ldots+\alpha_{1 \mathrm{n}} \mathrm{~T}_{1 \mathrm{n}}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{i} 1} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{i} 1}+\alpha_{\mathrm{i} 2} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{i} 2}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{in}} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{in}}\right. \\
& \left.+\alpha_{\mathrm{m} 1} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{m} 1}+\alpha_{\mathrm{m} 2} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{m} 2}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{mn}} \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{mn}}\right) \\
& =\alpha_{\mathrm{i} 1} \mathrm{~W}_{1}+\alpha_{\mathrm{i} 2} \mathrm{w}_{2}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{in}} \mathrm{w}_{\mathrm{n}}=\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{~S} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Similarly we can see that $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{S}_{0}=\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{S}$ for every $\mathrm{i}, \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{m}$.
Therefore, $\mathrm{vS}_{0}=\mathrm{vS} \forall \mathrm{v} \in \mathrm{V}$. Hence $\mathrm{S}_{0}=\mathrm{S}$. It shows that every element of $\operatorname{Hom}(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{W})$ is a linear combination of $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{ij}}$ over F . It proves the result.
1.2.7 Corollary. If dimension of $V$ over $F$ is $n$, then dimension of $\operatorname{Hom}(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{V})$ over F $=n^{2}$ and dimension of $\operatorname{Hom}(V, F)$ is $n$ over $F$.
1.2.8 Note. $\operatorname{Hom}(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{F})$ is called dual space and its elements are called linear functional on $V$ into $F$. Let $v_{1}, v_{2}, \ldots, v_{n}$ be basis of $V$ over $F$ then $\hat{v}_{1}, \hat{v}_{2}, \ldots, \hat{v}_{n}$ defined by $\hat{v}_{i}\left(v_{j}\right)=\left\{\begin{array}{ll}1 & \text { if } i=j \\ 0 & \text { if } i \neq j\end{array}\right.$ are linear functionals on $V$ which acts as basis elements for V . If v is non zero element of V then choose $\mathrm{v}_{1}=\mathrm{v}, \mathrm{v}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}}$ as the basis for V . Then there exist $\hat{\mathrm{v}}_{1}\left(\mathrm{v}_{1}\right)=\hat{\mathrm{v}}_{1}(\mathrm{v})=1 \neq 0$. In other words we have shown that for given non zero vector v in V we have a linear transformation $\mathrm{f}($ say $)$ such that $\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{v}) \neq 0$.

### 1.3 ALGEBRA OF LINEAR TRANSFORMATIONS

1.3.1 Definition. Algebra. An associative ring A which is a vector space over $F$ such that $\alpha(a b)=(\alpha a) b=a(\alpha b)$ for all $a, b \in A$ and $\alpha \in F$ is called an algebra over F.
1.3.2 Note. It is easy to see that set of all $\operatorname{Hom}(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{V})$ becomes an algebra under the multiplication of $S$ and $T \in \operatorname{Hom}(V, V)$ defined as:

$$
v(S T)=(v S) T \text { for all } v \in V
$$

we will denote $\operatorname{Hom}(\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{V})=\mathrm{A}(\mathrm{V})$. If dimension of V over F i.e. $\operatorname{dim}_{\mathrm{F}} \mathrm{V}=\mathrm{n}$, then $\operatorname{dim}_{\mathrm{F}} \mathrm{A}(\mathrm{V})=\mathrm{n}^{2}$ over F .
1.3.3 Theorem. Let $A$ be an algebra with unit element and $\operatorname{dim}_{\mathrm{F}} \mathrm{A}=\mathrm{n}$, then every element of A satisfies some polynomial of degree at most $n$. In particular if $\operatorname{dim}_{F} V=n$, then every element of $A(V)$ satisfies some polynomial of degree at most $\mathrm{n}^{2}$.

Proof. Let $e$ be the unit element of A . As $\operatorname{dim}_{\mathrm{F}} \mathrm{A}=\mathrm{n}$, therefore, for $\mathrm{a} \in \mathrm{A}$, the $\mathrm{n}+1$ elements e, $a, a^{2}, \ldots, a^{\mathrm{n}}$ are all in A and are linearly dependent over F , i.e. there exist $\beta_{0}, \beta_{1}, \ldots, \beta_{\mathrm{n}}$ in F , not all zero, such that $\beta_{0} \mathrm{e}+\beta_{1} a+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{n}} a^{\mathrm{n}}=0$. But then $a$ satisfies a polynomial $\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} \mathrm{x}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{n}}$ over F . It proves the result. Since the $\operatorname{dim}_{F} A(V)=n^{2}$, therefore, every element of $A(V)$ satisfies some polynomial of degree at most $n^{2}$.
1.3.4 Definition. An element $\mathrm{T} \in \mathrm{A}(\mathrm{V})$ is called right invertible if there exist $\mathrm{S} \in \mathrm{A}(\mathrm{V})$ such that $\mathrm{TS}=\mathrm{I}$. Similarly $\mathrm{ST}=\mathrm{I}$ (Here I is identity mapping) implies that T is left invertible. An element T is called invertible or regular if it both right as well as left invertible. If T is not regular then it is called singular transformation. It may be that an element of $\mathrm{A}(\mathrm{V})$ is right invertible but not left. For example, Let $F$ be the field of real numbers and $V$ be the space of all polynomial in $x$ over $F$. Define $T$ on $V$ by $f(x) T=\frac{d f(x)}{d x}$ and $S$ by $f(x) S=\int_{1}^{x} f(x) d x$. Both $S$ and $T$ are linear transformations. Since $f(x)(S T) \neq f(x)$ i.e. $S T \neq I$ and $f(x)(T S)=f(x)$ i.e. $T S=I$. Here $T$ is right invertible while it is not left invertible.
1.3.5 Note. Since $T \in A(V)$ satisfies some polynomial over $F$, the polynomial of minimum degree satisfied by T is called the minimal polynomial of T over F
1.3.6 Theorem. If $V$ is finite dimensional over $F$, then $T \in A(V)$ is invertible if and only if the constant term of the minimal polynomial for T is non zero.
Proof. Let $p(x)=\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} x+\ldots+\beta_{n} x^{n}, \beta_{n} \neq 0$, be the minimal polynomial for $T$ over F. First suppose that $\beta_{0} \neq 0$, then $0=p(T)=\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} T+\ldots+\beta_{n} T^{n}$ implies that $-\beta_{0} \mathrm{I}=\mathrm{T}\left(\beta_{1} \mathrm{~T}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{n}-1}\right)$ or

$$
\mathrm{I}=\mathrm{T}\left(-\frac{\beta_{1}}{\beta_{0}}-\frac{\beta_{1}}{\beta_{0}} \mathrm{~T}-\ldots--\frac{\beta_{1}}{\beta_{0}} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{n}-1}\right)=\left(-\frac{\beta_{1}}{\beta_{0}}-\frac{\beta_{1}}{\beta_{0}} \mathrm{~T}-\ldots--\frac{\beta_{1}}{\beta_{0}} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{n}-1}\right) \mathrm{T}
$$

Therefore, $S=\left(-\frac{\beta_{1}}{\beta_{0}}-\frac{\beta_{1}}{\beta_{0}} \mathrm{~T}-\ldots--\frac{\beta_{1}}{\beta_{0}} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{n}-1}\right)$ is the inverse of T .
Conversely suppose that T is invertible, yet $\beta_{0}=0$. Then $\beta_{1} \mathrm{~T}+\ldots+$ $\beta_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{n}}=0 \Rightarrow\left(\beta_{1} \mathrm{~T}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{n}-1}\right) \mathrm{T}=0$. As T is invertible, on operating $\mathrm{T}^{-1}$ on both sides of above equations we get $\left(\beta_{1} \mathrm{~T}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{n}-1}\right)=0$ i.e. T satisfies a polynomial of degree less then the degree of minimal polynomial of $T$, contradicting to our assumption that $\beta_{0}=0$. Hence $\beta_{0} \neq 0$. It proves the result.
1.3.7 Corollary. If $V$ is finite dimensional over $F$ and if $T \in A(V)$ is singular, then there exist non zero element $S$ of $A(V)$ such that $S T=T S=0$.
Proof. Let $\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{x})=\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} \mathrm{x}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{n}}, \beta_{\mathrm{n}} \neq 0$ be the minimal polynomial for T over F. Since $T$ is singular, therefore, constant term of $p(x)$ is zero. Hence $\left(\beta_{1} \mathrm{~T}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{n}-1}\right) \mathrm{T}=\mathrm{T}\left(\beta_{1} \mathrm{~T}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{n}-1}\right)=0$. Choose $\mathrm{S}=\left(\beta_{1} \mathrm{~T}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{n}-1}\right)$, then $\mathrm{S} \neq 0$ (if $\mathrm{S}=0$, then T satisfies the polynomial of degree less than the degree of minimal polynomial of it) fulfill the requirement of the result.
1.3.8 Corollary. If $V$ is finite dimensional over $F$ and if $T$ belonging to $A(V)$ is right invertible, then it is left invertible also. In other words if T is right invertible then it is invertible.

Proof. Let $\mathrm{U} \in \mathrm{A}(\mathrm{V})$ be the right inverse of T i.e. $\mathrm{TU}=\mathrm{I}$. If possible suppose T is singular, then there exist non-zero transformation $S$ such that $\mathrm{ST}=\mathrm{TS}=0$. As

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{S}(\mathrm{TU})=(\mathrm{ST}) \mathrm{U} \\
\Rightarrow \quad & \mathrm{SI}=0 \mathrm{U} \Rightarrow \mathrm{~S}=0 \text {, a contradiction that } \mathrm{S} \text { is non zero. This }
\end{aligned}
$$ contradiction proves that T is invertible.

1.3.9 Theorem. For a finite dimensional vector space over $F, T \in A(V)$ is singular if and only if there exist a $\mathrm{v} \neq 0$ in V such that $\mathrm{v} \mathrm{T}=0$.

Proof. By Corollary 1.3.7, T is singular if and only if there exist non zero element $\mathrm{S} \in \mathrm{A}(\mathrm{V})$ such that $\mathrm{ST}=\mathrm{TS}=0$. As S is non zero, therefore, there exist an element $\mathrm{u} \in \mathrm{V}$ such that $\mathrm{uS} \neq 0$. More over $0=\mathrm{u} 0=\mathrm{u}(\mathrm{ST})=(\mathrm{uS}) \mathrm{T}$. Choose $\mathrm{v}=\mathrm{uS}$, then $\mathrm{v} \neq 0$ and $\mathrm{vT}=0$. It prove the result.

### 1.4 CHARACTERISTIC ROOTS

In rest of the results, V is always finite dimensional vector space over F .
1.4.1 Definition. For $T \in A(V), \lambda \in F$ is called Characteristic root of $T$ if $\lambda I-T$ is singular where I is identity transformation in $\mathrm{A}(\mathrm{V})$.
If T is singular, then clearly 0 is characteristic root of T .
1.4.2 Theorem. The element $\lambda \in \mathrm{F}$ is called characteristic root of T if and only there exist an element $\mathrm{v} \neq 0$ in V such that $\mathrm{vT}=\lambda \mathrm{v}$.

Proof. Since $\lambda$ is characteristic root of T, therefore, by definition the mapping $\lambda \mathrm{I}-\mathrm{T}$ is singular. But then by Theorem 1.3.9, $\lambda \mathrm{I}-\mathrm{T}$ is singular if and only if $\mathrm{v}(\lambda \mathrm{I}-\mathrm{T})=0$ for some $\mathrm{v} \neq 0$ in V . As $\mathrm{v}(\lambda \mathrm{I}-\mathrm{T})=0 \Rightarrow \mathrm{v} \lambda-\mathrm{vT}=0 \Rightarrow \mathrm{vT}=\lambda \mathrm{v}$. Hence $\lambda \in \mathrm{F}$ is characteristic root of T if and only there exist an element $\mathrm{v} \neq 0$ in V such that $\mathrm{vT}=\lambda \mathrm{v}$.
1.4.3 Theorem. If $\lambda \in \mathrm{F}$ is a characteristic root of T , then for any polynomial $\mathrm{q}(\mathrm{x})$ over $\mathrm{F}[\mathrm{x}], \mathrm{q}(\lambda)$ is a characteristic root of $\mathrm{q}[\mathrm{T}]$.

Proof. By Theorem 1.4.2, if $\lambda \in \mathrm{F}$ is characteristic root of T then there exist an element $\mathrm{v} \neq 0$ in V such that $\mathrm{vT}=\lambda \mathrm{v}$. But then $\mathrm{vT}^{2}=(\mathrm{vT}) \mathrm{T}=(\lambda \mathrm{v}) \mathrm{T}=\lambda \lambda \mathrm{v}=\lambda^{2} \mathrm{v}$. i.e. $\mathrm{vT}^{2}=\lambda^{2} \mathrm{v}$. Continuing in this way we get, $\mathrm{vT}^{k}=\lambda^{k} \mathrm{v}$. Let $\mathrm{q}(\mathrm{x})=\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} \mathrm{x}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{n}}$, then $q(T)=\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} T+\ldots+\quad \beta_{n} T^{n} \quad$. Now by above discussion, $\mathrm{vq}(\mathrm{T})=\mathrm{v}\left(\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} \mathrm{~T}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{n}}\right)=\beta_{0} \mathrm{v}+\beta_{1}(\mathrm{vT})+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{n}}\left(\mathrm{vT} \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{n}}\right)=\beta_{0} \mathrm{v}+\beta_{1} \lambda^{2} \mathrm{v}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{n}}$ $\lambda^{n} \mathrm{v}=\left(\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} \lambda^{2}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{n}} \lambda^{\mathrm{n}}\right) \mathrm{v}=\mathrm{q}(\lambda) \mathrm{v}$. Hence $\mathrm{q}(\lambda)$ is characteristic root of $\mathrm{q}(\mathrm{T})$.
1.4.4 Theorem. If $\lambda$ is characteristic root of $T$, then $\lambda$ is a root of minimal polynomial of $T$. In particular, T has a finite number of characteristic roots in F.

Proof. As we know that if $\lambda$ is a characteristic root of T, then for any polynomial $q(x)$ over $F$, there exist a non zero vector $v$ such that $v q(T)=q(\lambda) v$. If we take $q(x)$ as minimal polynomial of $T$ then $q(T)=0$. But then $v q(T)=q(\lambda) v$ $\Rightarrow q(\lambda) v=0$. As v is non zero, therefore, $\mathrm{q}(\lambda)=0$ i.e. $\lambda$ is root of minimal polynomial of T.

### 1.5 CHARACTERISTIC VECTORS

1.5.1 Definition. The non zero vector $\mathrm{v} \in \mathrm{V}$ is called characteristic vector belonging to characteristic root $\lambda \in \mathrm{F}$ if $\mathrm{vT}=\lambda \mathrm{v}$.
1.5.2 Theorem. If $\mathrm{v}_{1}, \mathrm{v}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}}$ are different characteristic vectors belonging to distinct characteristic roots $\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \ldots, \lambda_{\mathrm{n}}$ respectively, then $\mathrm{v}_{1}, \mathrm{v}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{k}}$ are linearly independent over F .

Proof. Let if possible $\mathrm{v}_{1}, \mathrm{v}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}}$ are linearly dependent over F , then there exist a relation $\beta_{1} \mathrm{v}_{1}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}}=0$, where $\beta_{1},+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{n}}$ are all in F and not all of them are zero. In all such relation, there is one relation having as few non zero coefficient as possible. By suitably renumbering the vectors, let us assume that this shortest relation be

$$
\begin{equation*}
\beta_{1} \mathrm{v}_{1}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{k}}=0, \text { where } \beta_{1} \neq 0, \ldots, \beta_{\mathrm{k}} \neq 0 \tag{i}
\end{equation*}
$$

Applying T on both sides and using $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{T}=\lambda_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}}$ in (i) we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lambda_{1} \beta_{1} v_{1}+\ldots+\lambda_{\mathrm{k}} \beta_{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{k}}=0 \tag{ii}
\end{equation*}
$$

Multiplying (i) by $\lambda_{1}$ and subtracting from (ii), we obtain

$$
\left(\lambda_{2}-\lambda_{1}\right) \beta_{2} \mathrm{v}_{2}+\ldots+\left(\lambda_{\mathrm{k}}-\lambda_{1}\right) \beta_{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{k}}=0
$$

Now $\left(\lambda_{i}-\lambda_{1}\right) \neq 0$ for $i>1$ and $\beta_{2} \neq 0$, therefore, $\left(\lambda_{i}-\lambda_{1}\right) \beta_{i} \neq 0$. But then we obtain a shorter relation than that in (i) between $\mathrm{v}_{1}, \mathrm{v}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}}$. This contradiction proves the theorem.
1.5.3 Corollary. If $\operatorname{dim}_{\mathrm{F}} \mathrm{V}=\mathrm{n}$, then $\mathrm{T} \in \mathrm{A}(\mathrm{V})$ can have at most n distinct characteristic roots in F.

Proof. Let if possible T has more than n distinct characteristic roots in F , then there will be more than n distinct characteristic vectors belonging to these distinct characteristic roots. By Theorem 1.5.2, these vectors will be linearly independent over F. Since $\operatorname{dim}_{\mathrm{F}} \mathrm{V}=\mathrm{n}$, these $\mathrm{n}+1$ element will be linearly dependent, a contradiction. This contradiction proves $T$ can have at most $n$ distinct characteristic roots in F .
1.5.4 Corollary. If $\operatorname{dim}_{\mathrm{F}} \mathrm{V}=\mathrm{n}$ and $\mathrm{T} \in \mathrm{A}(\mathrm{V})$ has n distinct characteristic roots in F . Then there is a basis of V over F which consists of characteristic vectors of T . Proof. As T has n distinct characteristic roots in F , therefore, n characteristic vectors belonging to these characteristic roots will be linearly independent over F . As we know that if $\operatorname{dim}_{\mathrm{F}} \mathrm{V}=\mathrm{n}$ then every set of n linearly independent vectors acts as basis of V (prove it). Hence set of characteristic vectors will act as basis of V over F . It proves the result.

Example. If $T \in A(V)$ and if $q(x) \in F[x]$ is such that $q(T)=0$, is it true that every root of $q(x)$ in $F$ is a characteristic root of $T$ ? Either prove that this is true or give an example to show that it is false.

Solution. It is not true always. For it take V, a vector space over F with $\operatorname{dim}_{F} V=2$ with $v_{1}$ and $v_{2}$ as basis element. It is clear that for $v \in V$, we have unique $\alpha, \beta$ in $F$ such that $v=\alpha v_{1}+\beta v_{2}$. Define a transformation $T \in A(V)$ by $\mathrm{v}_{1} \mathrm{~T}=\mathrm{v}_{2}$ and $\mathrm{v}_{2} \mathrm{~T}=0$. let $\lambda$ be characteristic root of T in F , then $\lambda \mathrm{I}-\mathrm{T}$ is singular. It mean there exist a vector $\mathrm{v}(\neq 0)$ in V such that

$$
\mathrm{vT}=\lambda \mathrm{v} \Rightarrow\left(\alpha \mathrm{v}_{1}+\beta \mathrm{v}_{2}\right) \mathrm{T}=\lambda \alpha \mathrm{v}_{1}+\lambda \beta \mathrm{v}_{2} \Rightarrow \alpha\left(\mathrm{v}_{1} \mathrm{~T}\right)+\beta\left(\mathrm{v}_{2} \mathrm{~T}\right)=\lambda \alpha \mathrm{v}_{1}+\lambda \beta \mathrm{v}_{2} \Rightarrow
$$ $\alpha v_{2}+\beta .0=\lambda \alpha v_{1}+\lambda \beta v_{2}$. As $v$ is nonzero vector, therefore, at least one of $\alpha$ or $\beta$ is nonzero. But then $\alpha v_{2}+\beta .0=\lambda \alpha v_{1}+\lambda \beta v_{2}$ implies that $\lambda=0$. Hence zero is the only characteristic root of $T$ in $F$. If We take a polynomial $q(x)=x^{2}(x-1)$, then $q(T)=T^{2}(T-I)$. Now $\quad v_{1} q(T)=\left(\left(v_{1} T\right) T\right)(T-I)=\left(v_{2} T\right)(T-I)=0(T-I)=0, v_{2} q(T)=$ $\left(\left(\mathrm{v}_{2} \mathrm{~T}\right) \mathrm{T}\right)(\mathrm{T}-\mathrm{I})=(0 \mathrm{~T})(\mathrm{T}-\mathrm{I})=0$, therefore, $\mathrm{vq}(\mathrm{T})=0 \quad \forall \mathrm{v} \in \mathrm{V}$. Hence $\mathrm{q}(\mathrm{T})=0$. As every root of $q(x)$ lies in $F$ yet every root of $T$ is not a characteristic root of $T$.

Example. If $\mathrm{T} \in \mathrm{A}(\mathrm{V})$ and if $\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{x}) \in \mathrm{F}[\mathrm{x}]$ is the minimal polynomial for T over F, suppose that $p(x)$ has all its roots in F. Prove that every root of $p(x)$ is a characteristic root of T.

Solution. Let $\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{n}}+\beta_{1} \mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{n}-1}+\ldots+\beta_{0}$ be the minimal polynomial for T and $\lambda$ be its root. Then $p(x)=(x-\lambda)\left(x^{n-1}+\gamma_{1} x^{n-2}+\ldots+\gamma_{0}\right)$. Since $p(T)=0$, therefore, $(\mathrm{T}-\lambda)\left(\mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{n}-1}+\gamma_{1} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{n}-2}+\ldots+\gamma_{0}\right)=0$. If $(\mathrm{T}-\lambda)$ is regular then $\left(\mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{n}-1}+\gamma_{1} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{n}-2}+\ldots+\gamma_{0}\right)=0$, contradicting the fact that the minimal polynomial of $T$ is of degree $n$ over $F$. Hence (T- $\lambda$ ) is not regular i.e. (T- $\lambda$ ) is singular and hence there exist a non zero vector v in V such that $\mathrm{v}(\mathrm{T}-\lambda)=0$ i.e. $\mathrm{vT}=\lambda \mathrm{v}$. Consequently $\lambda$ is characteristic root of T .

### 1.6 MATRIX OF TRANSFORMATIONS

1.6.1 Notation. The matrix of $T$ under given basis of $V$ is denoted by $m(T)$.

We know that for determining a transformation $\mathrm{T} \in \mathrm{A}(\mathrm{V})$ it is sufficient to find out the image of every basis element of V . Let $\mathrm{v}_{1}, \mathrm{v}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}}$ be the basis of V over F and let

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{v}_{1} \mathrm{~T}=\alpha_{11} \mathrm{v}_{1}+\alpha_{12} \mathrm{v}_{2}+\ldots+\alpha_{1 \mathrm{n}} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}} \\
& \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\
& \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{~T}=\alpha_{\mathrm{i1}} \mathrm{v}_{1}+\alpha_{\mathrm{i} 2} \mathrm{v}_{2}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{in}} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{~T}=\alpha_{\mathrm{n} 1} \mathrm{v}_{1}+\alpha_{\mathrm{n} 2} \mathrm{v}_{2}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{nn}} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}}
$$

Then matrix of T under this basis is

$$
m(T)=\left[\begin{array}{cccc}
\alpha_{11} & \alpha_{12} & \ldots & \alpha_{1 n} \\
\ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\
\alpha_{\mathrm{i} 1} & \alpha_{\mathrm{i} 2} & \ldots & \alpha_{\mathrm{in}} \\
\ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\
\alpha_{\mathrm{n} 1} & \alpha_{\mathrm{n} 2} & \ldots & \alpha_{\mathrm{nn}}
\end{array}\right]_{\mathrm{n} \times \mathrm{n}}
$$

Example. Let F be the field and V be the set of all polynomials in x of degree $\mathrm{n}-1$ or less. It is clear that V is a vector space over F . The dimension of this vector space is $n$. Let $\left\{1, x, x^{2}, \ldots, x^{n-1}\right\}$ be its basis. For $\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} x+\ldots+\beta_{n-1} x^{n-1}$ $\in V$, Define $\left(\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} x+\ldots+\beta_{n-1} x^{n-1}\right) D=\beta_{1}+2 \beta_{2} x^{2}+\ldots+n-1 \beta_{n-1} x^{n-2}$. Then $D$ is a linear transformation on V . Now we calculate the matrix of D under the basis $v_{1}(=1), v_{2}(=x), v_{3}\left(=x^{2}\right), \ldots, v_{n}\left(=x^{n-1}\right)$ as:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{v}_{1} \mathrm{D}=1 \mathrm{D}=0=0 . \mathrm{v}_{1}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{2}+\ldots+0 . \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}} \\
& \mathrm{v}_{2} \mathrm{D}=\mathrm{xD}=1=1 . \mathrm{v}_{1}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{2}+\ldots+0 . \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}} \\
& \mathrm{v}_{3} \mathrm{D}=\mathrm{x}^{2} \mathrm{D}=2 \mathrm{x}=0 . \mathrm{v}_{1}+2 . \mathrm{v}_{2}+\ldots+0 . \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}} \\
& v_{i} D=x^{i-1} D=i x^{i-1}=0 . v_{1}+0 . v_{2}+\ldots . . v_{i}+\ldots+0 . v_{n} \\
& \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{D}=\mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{n}-1} \mathrm{D}=\mathrm{n}-1 \mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{n}-2}=0 . \mathrm{v}_{1}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{2}+\ldots+(\mathrm{n}-1) \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}-1}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Then matrix of $D$ is

$$
\mathrm{m}(\mathrm{D})=\left[\begin{array}{ccccccc}
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 2 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 3 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 0 \\
. & . & . & . & \ldots & . & . \\
0 & 0 & 0 & . & \mathrm{n}-2 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & . & \ldots & \mathrm{n}-1 & 0
\end{array}\right]_{\mathrm{n} \times \mathrm{n}}
$$

Similarly we take another basis $\mathrm{v}_{1}\left(=\mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{n}-1}\right), \mathrm{v}_{2}\left(=\mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{n}-2}\right), \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}}(=1)$, then matrix of D under this basis is

$$
\mathrm{m}_{1}(\mathrm{D})=\left[\begin{array}{ccccccc}
0 & \mathrm{n}-1 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & \mathrm{n}-2 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & \mathrm{n}-3 & \ldots & 0 & 0 \\
0 & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & 0 \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\
0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & \ldots & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & . & \ldots & \ldots & 0
\end{array}\right]_{\mathrm{n} \times \mathrm{n}}
$$

If we take the basis $v_{1}(=1), v_{2}(=1+x), v_{3}\left(=1+x^{2}\right), . ., v_{n}\left(=1+x^{n-1}\right)$ then the matrix of D under this basis is obtained as:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& v_{1} D=1 D=0=0 . v_{1}+0 . v_{2}+\ldots+0 . v_{n} \\
& v_{2} D=(1+x) D=1=1 . v_{1}+0 . v_{2}+\ldots+0 . v_{n} \\
& v_{3} D=\left(1+x^{2}\right) D=2 x=-2+2(1+x)=-2 \cdot v_{1}+2 \cdot v_{2}+\ldots+0 . v_{n} \\
& \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\
& v_{n} D=x^{n-1} D=n-1 x^{n-2}=-(n-1)+n-1\left(1+x^{n-2}\right)=-(n-1) \cdot v_{1}+\ldots+(n-1) v_{n-1}+0 . v_{n}
\end{aligned}
$$

Then matrix of $D$ is

$$
\mathrm{m}_{3}(\mathrm{D})=\left[\begin{array}{ccccccc}
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 0 \\
-2 & 2 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 0 \\
-3 & 0 & 3 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 0 \\
. & . & . & . & \ldots & . & . \\
-(\mathrm{n}-2) & 0 & 0 & . & \mathrm{n}-2 & 0 & 0 \\
-(\mathrm{n}-1) & 0 & 0 & . & \ldots & \mathrm{n}-1 & 0
\end{array}\right]_{\mathrm{n} \times \mathrm{n}}
$$

1.6.3 Theorem. If $V$ is $n$ dimensional over $F$ and if $T \in A(V)$ has a matrix $m_{1}(T)$ in the basis $\mathrm{v}_{1}, \mathrm{v}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}}$ and the matrix in the basis in the basis $\mathrm{w}_{1}, \mathrm{w}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{w}_{\mathrm{n}}$ of V over $F$. Then there is an element $C \in F_{n}$ such that $m_{2}(T)=C m_{1}(T) C^{-1}$. In fact $C$ is matrix of transformation $S \in A(V)$ where $S$ is defined by $v_{i} S=w_{i} ; 1 \leq i \leq n$.

Proof. Let $\mathrm{m}_{1}(\mathrm{~T})=\left(\alpha_{\mathrm{ij}}\right)$, therefore, for $1 \leq \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{n}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
v_{i} T=\alpha_{i 1} v_{1}+\alpha_{i 2} v_{2}+\ldots+\alpha_{i n} v_{n}=\sum_{j=1}^{n} \alpha_{i j} v_{j} \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Similarly, if $\mathrm{m}_{2}(\mathrm{~T})=\left(\beta_{\mathrm{ij}}\right)$, therefore, for $1 \leq \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{n}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{w}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{~T}=\beta_{\mathrm{i} 1} \mathrm{~W}_{1}+\beta_{\mathrm{i} 2} \mathrm{~W}_{2}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{in}} \mathrm{~W}_{\mathrm{n}}=\sum_{\mathrm{j}=1}^{\mathrm{n}} \beta_{\mathrm{ij}} \mathrm{w}_{\mathrm{j}} \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{S}=\mathrm{w}_{\mathrm{i}}$, the mapping one -one and onto. Using $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{S}=\mathrm{w}_{\mathrm{i}}$ in (2) we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{ST} & =\beta_{\mathrm{i} 1}\left(\mathrm{v}_{1} \mathrm{~S}\right)+\beta_{\mathrm{i} 2}\left(\mathrm{v}_{2} \mathrm{~S}\right)+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{in}}\left(\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{~S}\right) \\
& =\left(\beta_{\mathrm{i} 1} \cdot \mathrm{v}_{1}+\beta_{\mathrm{i} 2} \mathrm{v}_{2}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{in}} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}}\right) \mathrm{S}
\end{aligned}
$$

As S is invertible, therefore, on applying $\mathrm{S}^{-1}$ on both sides of above equation we get $\quad v_{i}\left(\operatorname{STS}^{-1}\right)=\left(\beta_{i 1} \cdot v_{1}+\beta_{i 2} \mathrm{~V}_{2}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{in}} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}}\right)$. Then by definition of matrix we get $m_{1}\left(S T S^{-1}\right)=\left(\beta_{i j}\right)=m_{2}(T)$. As the mapping $T \rightarrow m(T)$ is an isomorphism from $\mathrm{A}(\mathrm{V})$ to $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}}$, therefore, $\mathrm{m}_{1}\left(\mathrm{STS}^{-1}\right)=\mathrm{m}_{1}(\mathrm{~S}) \mathrm{m}_{1}(\mathrm{~T}) \mathrm{m}_{1}\left(\mathrm{~S}^{-1}\right)=\mathrm{m}_{1}(\mathrm{~S}) \mathrm{m}_{1}(\mathrm{~T}) \mathrm{m}_{1}(\mathrm{~S})^{-1}=$ $m_{2}(T)$. Choose $C=m_{1}(S)$, then the result follows.

Example. Let V be the vector space of all polynomial of degree 3 or less over the field of reals. Let $T \in A(V)$ is defined as: $\left(\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} x+\beta_{2} x^{2}+\beta_{3} x^{3}\right) T$ $=\beta_{1}+2 \beta_{2} x+3 \beta_{3} x^{2}$. Then $D$ is a linear transformation on $V$. The matrix of $T$ in the basis $\mathrm{v}_{1}(=1), \mathrm{v}_{2}(=\mathrm{x}), \mathrm{v}_{3}\left(=\mathrm{x}^{2}\right), \mathrm{v}_{4}\left(=\mathrm{x}^{3}\right)$ as:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{v}_{1} \mathrm{~T}=1 \mathrm{~T}=0=0 . \mathrm{v}_{1}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{2}+0 \mathrm{v}_{3}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{4} \\
& \mathrm{v}_{2} \mathrm{~T}=\mathrm{xT}=1=1 \cdot \mathrm{v}_{1}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{2}+0 \mathrm{v}_{3}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{4} \\
& \mathrm{v}_{3} \mathrm{~T}=\mathrm{x}^{2} \mathrm{~T}=2 \mathrm{x}=0 . \mathrm{v}_{1}+2 \cdot \mathrm{v}_{2}+0 \mathrm{v}_{3}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{4} \\
& \mathrm{v}_{4} \mathrm{~T}=\mathrm{x}^{3} \mathrm{~T}=3 \mathrm{x}^{2}=0 . \mathrm{v}_{1}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{2}+3 \mathrm{v}_{3}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{4}
\end{aligned}
$$

Then matrix of t is

$$
\mathrm{m}_{1}(\mathrm{D})=\left[\begin{array}{llll}
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 2 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 3 & 0
\end{array}\right]
$$

Similarly matrix of T in the basis $\mathrm{w}_{1}(=1), \mathrm{w}_{2}(=1+\mathrm{x}), \mathrm{w}_{3}\left(=1+\mathrm{x}^{2}\right), \mathrm{w}_{4}\left(=1+\mathrm{x}^{3}\right)$, is

$$
\mathrm{m}_{2}(\mathrm{D})=\left[\begin{array}{cccc}
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
-2 & 2 & 0 & 0 \\
-3 & 0 & 3 & 0
\end{array}\right]
$$

If We set $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{S}=\mathrm{w}_{\mathrm{i}}$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{v}_{1} \mathrm{~S}=\mathrm{w}_{1}=1=1 \cdot \mathrm{v}_{1}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{2}+0 \mathrm{v}_{3}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{4} \\
& \mathrm{v}_{2} \mathrm{~S}=\mathrm{w}_{2}=1+\mathrm{x}=1 . \mathrm{v}_{1}+1 . \mathrm{v}_{2}+0 \mathrm{v}_{3}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{4} \\
& \mathrm{v}_{3} \mathrm{~S}=\mathrm{w}_{3}=1+\mathrm{x}^{2}=1 \cdot \mathrm{v}_{1}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{2}+1 \mathrm{v}_{3}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{4} \\
& \mathrm{v}_{4} \mathrm{~T}=\mathrm{w}_{4}=1+\mathrm{x}^{3}=1 . \mathrm{v}_{1}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{2}+0 \mathrm{v}_{3}+1 . \mathrm{v}_{4}
\end{aligned}
$$

But the $\mathrm{C}=\mathrm{m}(\mathrm{S})=\left[\begin{array}{llll}1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1\end{array}\right]$ and $\mathrm{C}^{-1}=\left[\begin{array}{cccc}1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 1\end{array}\right]$ and
$\mathrm{Cm}_{1}(\mathrm{D}) \mathrm{C}^{-1}=\left[\begin{array}{llll}1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{llll}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 & 0\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{cccc}1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 1\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{cccc}0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -2 & 2 & 0 & 0 \\ -3 & 0 & 3 & 0\end{array}\right]$
$=\mathrm{m}_{2}(\mathrm{D})$ as required.
1.6.3 Note. In above example we see that for given basis of $V$ there always exist a square matrix of order equal to the $\operatorname{dim}_{\mathrm{F}} \mathrm{V}$. Converse part is also true. i.e. for given basis and given matrix there always exist a linear transformation. Let V be the vector space of all $n$-tuples over the field $F$, then $F_{n}$ the set of all $n \times n$ matrix is an algebra over $F$. In fact if $v_{1}=(1,0,0 \ldots, 0), v_{2}=(0,1,0 \ldots, 0), \ldots$, $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}}=(0,0,0 \ldots, \mathrm{n})$, then $\left(\alpha_{\mathrm{ij}}\right) \in \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}}$ acts as: $\mathrm{v}_{1}\left(\alpha_{\mathrm{ij}}\right)=$ first row of $\left(\alpha_{\mathrm{ij}}\right), \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}}\left(\alpha_{\mathrm{ij}}\right)=\mathrm{i}^{\text {th }}$ row of $\left(\alpha_{\mathrm{ij}}\right)$. We denote $\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{t}}$ is a square matrix of order t such that its each super diagonal entry is one and the rest of the entries are zero. For example

$$
\mathrm{M}_{3}=\left[\begin{array}{lll}
0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right]_{3 \times 3} \text { and } \mathrm{M}_{4}=\left[\begin{array}{llll}
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right]_{4 \times 4}
$$

### 1.7 SIMILAR TRANSFORMATIONS.

1.7.1 Definition (Similar transformations). Transformations S and T belonging to $A(V)$ are said to similar if there exist $R \in A(V)$ such that $R S R^{-1}=T$.
1.7.2 Definition. A subspace $W$ of vector space $V$ is invariant under $T \in A(V)$ if $\mathrm{WT} \subseteq \mathrm{W}$. In other words $\mathrm{w} T \in \mathrm{~W} \quad \forall \mathrm{w} \in \mathrm{W}$.
1.7.3 Theorem. If subspace $W$ of vector space is invariant under $T$, then $T$ induces a linear transformation $\overline{\mathrm{T}}$ on $\frac{\mathrm{V}}{\mathrm{W}}$, defined by $(\mathrm{v}+\mathrm{W}) \overline{\mathrm{T}}=\mathrm{vT}+\mathrm{W}$. Further if T satisfies the polynomial $q(x)$ over $F$, then so does $\bar{T}$.

Proof. Since the elements of $\frac{V}{W}$ are the cosets of $W$ in $V$, therefore, $\bar{T}$ defined by $(\mathrm{v}+\mathrm{W}) \overline{\mathrm{T}}=\mathrm{vT}+\mathrm{W}$ is a mapping on $\frac{\mathrm{V}}{\mathrm{W}}$. The mapping is well defined as $v_{1}+W=v_{2}+W \Rightarrow v_{1}-v_{2} \in W$. Since $W$ is invariant under $T$, therefore, $\mathrm{v}_{1}+\mathrm{W}=\mathrm{v}_{2}+\mathrm{W} \Rightarrow\left(\mathrm{v}_{1}-\mathrm{v}_{2}\right) \mathrm{T} \in \mathrm{W}$ which further implies that $\mathrm{v}_{1} \mathrm{~T}+\mathrm{W}=\mathrm{v}_{2} \mathrm{~T}+\mathrm{W} \quad$ i.e. $\quad\left(\mathrm{v}_{1}+\mathrm{W}\right) \overline{\mathrm{T}}=\left(\mathrm{v}_{2}+\mathrm{W}\right) \overline{\mathrm{T}} . \quad$ Further $\left.\left(\alpha\left(v_{1}+W\right)+\beta\left(v_{2}+W\right)\right) \bar{T}=\left(\left(\alpha v_{1}+\beta v_{2}\right)+W\right)\right) \bar{T}=\left(\alpha v_{1}+\beta v_{2}\right) T+W$. Since T is linear transformation, therefore, $\left(\alpha \mathrm{v}_{1}+\beta \mathrm{v}_{2}\right) \mathrm{T}+\mathrm{W}=\alpha\left(\mathrm{v}_{1} \mathrm{~T}\right)+\beta\left(\mathrm{v}_{2} \mathrm{~T}\right)$ $+\mathrm{W}=\alpha\left(\mathrm{v}_{1} \mathrm{~T}\right)+\beta\left(\mathrm{v}_{2} \mathrm{~T}\right)+\mathrm{W}=\alpha\left(\mathrm{v}_{1} \mathrm{~T}+\mathrm{W}\right)+\beta\left(\mathrm{v}_{2} \mathrm{~T}+\mathrm{W}\right)=\alpha\left(\mathrm{v}_{1}+\mathrm{W}\right) \overline{\mathrm{T}}$ $+\beta\left(\mathrm{v}_{2}+\mathrm{W}\right) \overline{\mathrm{T}}$ i.e. $\overline{\mathrm{T}}$ is a linear transformation on $\frac{\mathrm{V}}{\mathrm{W}}$.

Now we will show that for given polynomial $q(x)$ over $F$, $\overline{q(T)}=q(\bar{T})$. For given element $v+W$ of $\frac{V}{W},(v+W) \overline{T^{2}}=v T^{2}+W$ $=(\mathrm{vT}) \mathrm{T}+\mathrm{W}=(\mathrm{vT}+\mathrm{W}) \overline{\mathrm{T}}=(\mathrm{v}+\mathrm{W}) \overline{\mathrm{T}} \overline{\mathrm{T}}=(\mathrm{v}+\mathrm{W}) \overline{\mathrm{T}}^{2} \forall \quad \mathrm{v}+\mathrm{W} \quad \in \frac{\mathrm{V}}{\mathrm{W}}$. i.e. $\overline{\mathrm{T}^{2}}=\overline{\mathrm{T}}^{2}$. Similarly we can see that $\overline{\mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{i}}}=\overline{\mathrm{T}}^{\mathrm{i}} \quad \forall \quad$ i. If $\mathrm{q}(\mathrm{x})=\alpha_{0}+\alpha_{1} \mathrm{x}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{n}}, \quad$ then $\mathrm{q}(\mathrm{T})=\alpha_{0}+\alpha_{1} \mathrm{~T}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{n}} \quad$ and $(\mathrm{v}+\mathrm{W}) \overline{\mathrm{q}(\mathrm{T})}=(\mathrm{v}+\mathrm{W})\left(\alpha_{0}+\alpha_{1} \mathrm{~T}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{n}}\right)=\mathrm{v}\left(\alpha_{0}+\alpha_{1} \mathrm{~T}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{n}}\right)+\mathrm{W}$ $=\alpha_{0} v+W+\alpha_{1}(v T+W)+\ldots+\alpha_{n}\left(\mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}}+\mathrm{W}\right)=\alpha_{0}(\mathrm{v}+\mathrm{W})+\alpha_{1}(\mathrm{v}+\mathrm{W}) \overline{\mathrm{T}}+$ $\ldots+\alpha_{n}(\mathrm{v}+\mathrm{W}) \overline{\mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{n}}}$. Using $\overline{\mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{i}}}=\overline{\mathrm{T}}^{\mathrm{i}}$ we get $(\mathrm{v}+\mathrm{W}) \overline{\mathrm{q}(\mathrm{T})}=\alpha_{0}(\mathrm{v}+\mathrm{W})+\alpha_{1}(\mathrm{v}+\mathrm{W}) \overline{\mathrm{T}}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{n}}(\mathrm{v}+\mathrm{W}) \overline{\mathrm{T}}^{\mathrm{n}}$ $=(\mathrm{v}+\mathrm{W})\left(\alpha_{0}+\alpha_{1} \overline{\mathrm{~T}}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{n}} \overline{\mathrm{T}}^{\mathrm{n}}\right)=(\mathrm{v}+\mathrm{W}) \mathrm{q}(\overline{\mathrm{T}})$ i.e. $\overline{\mathrm{q}(\mathrm{T})}=\mathrm{q}(\overline{\mathrm{T}})$. Since by given condition $\mathrm{q}(\mathrm{T})=0$, therefore, $0=\overline{\mathrm{q}(\mathrm{T})}=\mathrm{q}(\overline{\mathrm{T}})$. Hence $\overline{\mathrm{T}}$ satisfies the same polynomial as satisfied by T .
1.7.4 Corollary. If subspace $W$ of vector space is invariant under $T$, then $T$ induces a linear transformation $\overline{\mathrm{T}}$ on $\frac{\mathrm{V}}{\mathrm{W}}$, defined by $(\mathrm{v}+\mathrm{W}) \overline{\mathrm{T}}=\mathrm{vT}+\mathrm{W}$ and
minimal polynomial $\mathrm{p}_{1}(\mathrm{x})($ say $)$ of $\overline{\mathrm{T}}$ divides the minimal polynomial $\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{x})$ of T.

Proof. Since $p(x)$ is minimal polynomial of T, therefore, $p(T)=0$. But then by Theorem 1.7.3, $p(\bar{T})=0$. Further, $p_{1}(x)$ is minimal polynomial of $\bar{T}$, therefore, $\mathrm{p}_{1}(\mathrm{x})$ divides $\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{x})$.

### 1.8 CANONICAL FORM(TRIANGULAR FORM)

1.8.1 Definition. Let $T$ be a linear transformation on $V$ over $F$. The matrix of $T$ in the basis $\mathrm{v}_{1}, \mathrm{v}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}}$ is called triangular if

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{v}_{1} \mathrm{~T}=\alpha_{11} \mathrm{v}_{1}, \\
& \mathrm{v}_{2} \mathrm{~T}=\alpha_{21} \mathrm{v}_{1}+\alpha_{22} \mathrm{v}_{2} \\
& \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots . \quad \ldots \\
& \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{~T}=\alpha_{\mathrm{i1}} \mathrm{v}_{1}+\alpha_{\mathrm{i} 2} \mathrm{v}_{2}+\ldots \alpha_{\mathrm{ii}} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} \\
& \ldots . \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\
& \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{~T}=\alpha_{\mathrm{n} 1} \mathrm{v}_{1}+\alpha_{\mathrm{n} 2} \mathrm{v}_{2}+\ldots \alpha_{\mathrm{nn}} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}}
\end{aligned}
$$

1.8.2 Theorem. If $\mathrm{T} \in \mathrm{A}(\mathrm{V})$ has all its characteristic roots in F , then there exist a basis of V in which the matrix of T is triangular.
Proof. We will prove the result by induction on $\operatorname{dim}_{F} \mathrm{~V}=n$.
Let $\mathrm{n}=1$. By Corollary 1.5.3, T has exactly one distinct root $\lambda$ (say) in F. Let $\mathrm{v}(\neq 0)$ be corresponding characteristic root in V . Then $\mathrm{vT}=\lambda \mathrm{v}$. Since $n=1$. take $\{v\}$ as a basis of V . Now the matrix of T in this basis is $[\lambda]$. Hence the result is true for $n=1$.

Choose $n>1$ and suppose that the result holds for all transformations having all its roots in F and are defined on vector space $\mathrm{V}^{*}$ having dimension less then $n$.

Since T has all its characteristic roots in F ; let $\lambda_{1}$ be the root characteristic roots in F and $\mathrm{v}_{1}$ be the corresponding characteristic vector. Hence $v_{1} T=\lambda_{1} v_{1}$. Choose $W=\left\{\alpha v_{1} \mid \alpha \in F\right\}$. Then $W$ is one dimensional subspace of $V$. Since $\left(\alpha v_{1}\right) T=\alpha\left(v_{1} T\right)=\alpha \lambda_{1} V_{1} \in W$, therefore, $W$ is invariant under T. Let $\hat{V}=\frac{V}{W}$. Then $\hat{V}$ is a subspace of $V$ such that $\operatorname{dim}_{F} \hat{V}=\operatorname{dim}_{F} V$ -
$\operatorname{dim}_{\mathrm{F}} \mathrm{W}=\mathrm{n}-1$. By Corollary 1.7.4, all the roots of minimal polynomial of induced transformation $\bar{T}$ being the roots of minimal polynomial of T , lies in F. Hence the linear transformation $\overline{\mathrm{T}}$ in its action on $\hat{\mathrm{V}}$ satisfies hypothesis of the theorem. Further $\operatorname{dim}_{\mathrm{F}} \hat{\mathrm{V}}<\mathrm{n}$, there fore by induction hypothesis, there is a basis $\bar{v}_{2}\left(=v_{2}+W\right), \bar{v}_{3}\left(=v_{3}+W\right), \ldots, \bar{v}_{n}\left(=v_{n}+W\right)$ of $\hat{V}$ over $F$ such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \overline{\mathrm{v}}_{2} \overline{\mathrm{~T}}=\alpha_{22} \overline{\mathrm{v}}_{2}, \\
& \overline{\mathrm{v}}_{3} \overline{\mathrm{~T}}=\alpha_{32} \overline{\mathrm{v}}_{2}+\alpha_{33} \overline{\mathrm{v}}_{3}, \\
& \ldots . \quad \ldots \\
& \overline{\mathrm{v}}_{\mathrm{i}} \overline{\mathrm{~T}}= \\
& \ldots \\
& \ldots \\
& \ldots \\
& \mathrm{i}_{2} \overline{\mathrm{v}}_{2}+\alpha_{\mathrm{i} 3} \overline{\mathrm{v}}_{3}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{ii}} \overline{\mathrm{v}}_{\mathrm{i}} \\
& \overline{\mathrm{v}}_{\mathrm{n}} \overline{\mathrm{~T}}= \\
& =\alpha_{\mathrm{n} 2} \overline{\mathrm{v}}_{2}+\alpha_{\mathrm{n} 3} \overline{\mathrm{v}}_{3}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{nn}} \overline{\mathrm{v}}_{\mathrm{n}}
\end{aligned}
$$

i.e matrix of is triangular

Take a set $B=\left\{v_{1}, v_{2}, \ldots, v_{n}\right\}$. We will show that $B$ is the required basis which fulfills the requirement of the theorem. As the mapping $\mathrm{V} \rightarrow \hat{\mathrm{V}}$ defined by $\mathrm{v} \rightarrow \overline{\mathrm{v}}(=\mathrm{v}+\mathrm{W}) \forall \mathrm{v} \in \mathrm{V}$ is an onto homomorphism under which $\overline{\mathrm{v}}_{2}, \overline{\mathrm{v}}_{3}, \ldots$, $\bar{v}_{\mathrm{n}}$ are the images of $\mathrm{v}_{2}, \mathrm{v}_{3}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}}$ respectively. Since $\overline{\mathrm{v}}_{2}, \overline{\mathrm{v}}_{3}, \ldots, \overline{\mathrm{v}}_{\mathrm{n}}$ are linearly independent over F , then there pre-image vectors i.e. $\mathrm{v}_{2}, \mathrm{v}_{3}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}}$ are also linearly independent over F . More over $\mathrm{v}_{1}$ can not be lineal combination of vectors $\mathrm{v}_{2}, \mathrm{v}_{3}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}}$ because if it is so then $\overline{\mathrm{v}}_{2}, \overline{\mathrm{v}}_{3}, \ldots, \overline{\mathrm{v}}_{\mathrm{n}}$ will be linearly dependent over F . Hence the vectors $\mathrm{v}_{1}, \mathrm{v}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}}$ are n linearly independent vectors over F . Choose this set as the basis of V .

Since $\mathrm{v}_{1} \mathrm{~T}=\lambda_{1} \mathrm{~V}_{1}==\alpha_{11} \mathrm{~V}_{1}$ for $\alpha_{11}=\lambda_{1}$.
Since $\quad \bar{v}_{2} \bar{T}=\alpha_{22} \bar{v}_{2} \quad$ or $\quad\left(v_{2}+W\right) \bar{T}=\alpha_{22} v_{2}+W \quad$ or $\mathrm{v}_{2} \mathrm{~T}+\mathrm{W}=\alpha_{22} \mathrm{v}_{2}+\mathrm{W}$. But then $\mathrm{v}_{2} \mathrm{~T}-\alpha_{22} \mathrm{v}_{2} \in \mathrm{~W}$ and hence $\mathrm{v}_{2} \mathrm{~T}-\alpha_{22} \mathrm{v}_{2}=\alpha_{21} \mathrm{v}_{1}$. Equivalently,

$$
\mathrm{v}_{2} \mathrm{~T}=\alpha_{21} \mathrm{v}_{1}+\alpha_{22} \mathrm{v}_{2} .
$$

Similarly
$\overline{\mathrm{v}}_{3} \overline{\mathrm{~T}}=\alpha_{32} \overline{\mathrm{v}}_{2}+\alpha_{33} \overline{\mathrm{v}}_{3} \Rightarrow \mathrm{v}_{3} \mathrm{~T}=\alpha_{31} \mathrm{v}_{1}+\alpha_{32} \mathrm{v}_{2}+\alpha_{33} \mathrm{v}_{3}$.
Continuing in this way we get that

$$
\overline{\mathrm{v}}_{\mathrm{i}} \overline{\mathrm{~T}}=\alpha_{\mathrm{i} 2} \overline{\mathrm{v}}_{2}+\alpha_{\mathrm{i} 3} \overline{\mathrm{v}}_{3}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{ii}} \bar{v}_{\mathrm{i}}
$$

$$
\Rightarrow \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{~T}=\alpha_{\mathrm{i} 1} \mathrm{v}_{1}+\alpha_{\mathrm{i} 2} \mathrm{v}_{2}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{ii}} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} \text { for all } \mathrm{i}, 1 \leq \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{n} .
$$

Hence $B=\left\{v_{1}, v_{2}, \ldots, v_{n}\right\}$ is the required basis in which the matrix of $T$ is triangular.
1.8.3 Theorem. If the matrix $A \in F_{n}(=s e t$ of all $n$ order square matrices over $F$ ) has all its characteristic roots in F , then there is a matrix $\mathrm{C} \in \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}}$ such that $\mathrm{CAC}^{-1}$ is a triangular matrix.
Proof. Let $\mathrm{A}=\left[\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{ij}}\right] \in \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}}$. Further let $\mathrm{F}^{\mathrm{n}}=\left\{\left(\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}, \ldots, \alpha_{\mathrm{n}}\right) \mid \alpha_{\mathrm{i}} \in \mathrm{F}\right\}$ be a vector space over $F$ and $e_{1}, e_{2}, \ldots, e_{n}$ be a basis of basis of $V$ over $F$. Define $T: V \rightarrow V$ by

$$
\mathrm{e}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{~T}=\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{i} 1} \mathrm{e}_{1}+\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{i} 2} \mathrm{e}_{2}+\ldots+\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{ii}} \mathrm{e}_{\mathrm{i}}+\ldots+\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{in}} \mathrm{e}_{\mathrm{n}} .
$$

Then T is a linear transformation on V and the matrix of T in this basis is $\mathrm{m}_{1}(\mathrm{~T})=\left[\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{ij}}\right]=A$. Since the mapping $\mathrm{A}(\mathrm{V}) \rightarrow \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}}$ defined by $\mathrm{T} \rightarrow \mathrm{m}_{1}(\mathrm{~T})$ is an algebra isomorphism, therefore all the characteristic roots of A are in F . Equivalently all the characteristic root of T are in F. Therefore, by Theorem 1.8.2, there exist a basis of V in which the matrix of T is triangular. Let it be $m_{2}(T)$. By Theorem 1.6.3, there exist an invertible matrix $C$ in $F_{n}$ such that $\mathrm{m}_{2}(\mathrm{~T})=\mathrm{Cm}_{1}(\mathrm{~T}) \mathrm{C}^{-1}=\mathrm{CAC}^{-1}$. Hence $\mathrm{CAC}^{-1}$ is triangular.
1.8.4 Theorem. If $V$ is $n$ dimensional vector space over $F$ and let the matrix $A \in F_{n}$ has $n$ distinct characteristic roots in $F$, then there is a matrix $C \in F_{n}$ such that $\mathrm{CAC}^{-1}$ is a diagonal matrix.
Proof. Since all the characteristic roots of matrix A are distinct, the linear transformation T corresponding to this matrix under a given basis, also has distinct characteristic roots say $\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \ldots, \lambda_{n}$ in $F$. Let $v_{1}, v_{2}, \ldots, v_{n}$ be the corresponding characteristic vectors in V. But then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{~T}=\lambda_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} \forall 1 \leq \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{n} \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

We know that vectors corresponding to distinct characteristic root are linearly independent over $F$. Since these are $n$ linearly independent vectors over $F$ and dimension of V over F is n , therefore, set $\mathrm{B}=\left\{\mathrm{v}_{1}, \mathrm{v}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}}\right\}$ can be taken as basis set of V over F . Now the matrix of T in this basis is

$$
\left[\begin{array}{cccc}
\lambda_{1} & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\
0 & \lambda_{2} & \ldots & 0 \\
0 & \ldots & \ldots & 0 \\
0 & 0 & \ldots & \lambda_{\mathrm{n}}
\end{array}\right] \text {. Now By above Theorem, there }
$$

exist C in $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{n}}$ such that $\mathrm{CAC}^{-1}=\left[\begin{array}{cccc}\lambda_{1} & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_{2} & \ldots & 0 \\ 0 & \ldots & \ldots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \ldots & \lambda_{\mathrm{n}}\end{array}\right]$ is diagonal matrix.
1.8.5 Theorem. If $V$ is $n$ dimensional vector space over $F$ and $T \in A(V)$ has all its characteristic roots in $F$, then $T$ satisfies a polynomial of degree $n$ over $F$.

Proof. By Theorem 1.8.3, we can find out a basis of V in which matrix of T is triangular i.e. we have a basis $v_{1}, v_{2}, \ldots, v_{n}$ of $V$ over $F$ such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{v}_{1} \mathrm{~T}=\lambda_{1} \mathrm{v}_{1} \\
& \mathrm{v}_{2} \mathrm{~T}=\alpha_{21} \mathrm{v}_{1}+\lambda_{2} \mathrm{v}_{2} \\
& \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{~T}=\alpha_{\mathrm{i} 1} \mathrm{v}_{1}+\alpha_{\mathrm{i} 2} \mathrm{v}_{2}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{i}(\mathrm{i}-1)} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}-1}+\lambda_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} \\
& \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{~T}=\alpha_{\mathrm{n} 1} \mathrm{v}_{1}+\alpha_{\mathrm{n} 2} \mathrm{v}_{2}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{n}(\mathrm{n}-1)} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}-1}+\lambda_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Equivalently,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{v}_{1}\left(\mathrm{~T}-\lambda_{1}\right)=0 \\
& \mathrm{v}_{2}\left(\mathrm{~T}-\lambda_{2}\right)=\alpha_{21} \mathrm{v}_{1} \\
& \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\
& \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}}\left(\mathrm{~T}-\lambda_{\mathrm{i}}\right)=\alpha_{\mathrm{i} 1 \mathrm{v}_{1}+}+\alpha_{\mathrm{i} 2} \mathrm{v}_{2}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{i}(\mathrm{i}-1)} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}-1} \\
& \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \\
& \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}}\left(\mathrm{~T}-\lambda_{\mathrm{n}}\right)=\alpha_{\mathrm{n} 1} \mathrm{v}_{1}+\alpha_{\mathrm{n} 2} \mathrm{v}_{2}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{n}(\mathrm{n}-1)} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}-1} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Take the transformation

$$
\begin{aligned}
& S=\left(T-\lambda_{1}\right)\left(T-\lambda_{2}\right) \ldots\left(T-\lambda_{n}\right) . \\
v_{1} S= & v_{1}\left(T-\lambda_{1}\right)\left(T-\lambda_{2}\right) \ldots\left(T-\lambda_{n}\right)=0\left(T-\lambda_{2}\right) \ldots\left(T-\lambda_{n}\right)=0 \\
v_{2} S= & v_{2}\left(T-\lambda_{1}\right)\left(T-\lambda_{2}\right) \ldots\left(T-\lambda_{n}\right)=v_{2}\left(T-\lambda_{2}\right)\left(T-\lambda_{1}\right) \ldots\left(T-\lambda_{n}\right) \\
& =\alpha_{21} v_{1}\left(T-\lambda_{1}\right) \ldots\left(T-\lambda_{n}\right)=0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Then

Similarly we can see that $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{S}=0$ for $1 \leq \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{n}$. Equivalently, $\mathrm{vS}=0 \forall \mathrm{v} \in \mathrm{V}$. Hence $S=\left(T-\lambda_{1}\right)\left(T-\lambda_{2}\right) \ldots\left(T-\lambda_{n}\right)=0$ i.e. $S$ is zero transformation on $V$. Consequently $T$ satisfies the polynomial $\left(x-\lambda_{1}\right)\left(x-\lambda_{2}\right) \ldots\left(x-\lambda_{n}\right)$ of degree n over F.

### 1.9 KEY WORDS

Transformations, similar transformations, characteristic roots, canonical forms.

### 1.10 SUMMARY

In this chapter, we study about linear transformations, Algebra of linear transformations, characteristic roots and characteristic vectors of linear transformations, matrix of transformation and canonical form (Triangular form).

### 1.11 SELF ASSESMENT QUESTIONS

(1) If V is a finite dimensional vector space over the field of real numbers with basis $\mathrm{v}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{v}_{2}$. Find the characteristic roots and corresponding characteristic vectors for T defined by
(i) $\mathrm{v}_{1} \mathrm{~T}=\mathrm{v}_{1}+\mathrm{v}_{2}, \mathrm{v}_{2} \mathrm{~T}=\mathrm{v}_{1}-\mathrm{v}_{2}$
(ii) $\mathrm{v}_{1} \mathrm{~T}=5 \mathrm{v}_{1}+6 \mathrm{v}_{2}, \mathrm{v}_{2} \mathrm{~T}=-7 \mathrm{v}_{2}$
(iii) $\mathrm{v}_{1} \mathrm{~T}=\mathrm{v}_{1}+2 \mathrm{v}_{2}, \mathrm{v}_{2} \mathrm{~T}=3 \mathrm{v}_{1}+6 \mathrm{v}_{2}$
(2) If V is two-dimensional vector space over F , prove that every element in $A(V)$ satisfies a polynomial of degree 2 over $F$

### 1.12 SUGGESTED READINGS:

(1) Topics in Algebra; I.N HERSTEIN, John wiley and sons, New York.
(2) Modern Algebra; SURJEET SINGH and QAZI ZAMEERUDDIN, Vikas Publications.
(3) Basic Abstract Algebra; P.B. BHATTARAYA, S.K.JAIN, S.R. NAGPAUL, Cambridge University Press, Second Edition.

# MAL-521: M. Sc. Mathematics (Advance Abstract Algebra) 

Lesson No. 2<br>Written by Dr. Pankaj Kumar<br>Lesson: Canonical forms<br>Vetted by Dr. Nawneet Hooda

## STRUCTURE

### 2.0 OBJECTIVE

### 2.1 INTRODUCTION

### 2.2 NILPOTENT TRANSFORMATION

### 2.3 CANONICAL FORM(JORDAN FORM)

### 2.4 CANONICAL FORM( RATIONAL FORM)

### 2.5 KEY WORDS

### 2.6 SUMMARY

### 2.7 SELF ASSESMENT QUESTIONS

### 2.8 SUGGESTED READINGS

### 2.0 OBJECTIVE

Objective of this Chapter is to study Nilpotent Transformations and canonical forms of some transformations on the finite dimensional vector space V over the field F .

### 2.1 INTRODUCTION

Let $T \in A(V), V$ is finite dimensional vector space over $F$. In first chapter, we see that every T satisfies some minimal polynomial over F . If T is nilpotent transformation on V , then all the characteristic root of T lies in F . Therefore, there exists a basis of V under which matrix of T has nice form. Some time all the root of minimal polynomial of T does not lies in F. In that case we study, rational canonical form of T .

In this Chapter, in Section 2.2, we study about Nilpotent transformations. In next Section, Jordan forms of a transformation are studied. At the end of this chapter, we study, rational canonical forms.

### 2.2 NILPOTENT TRANSFORMATION

2.2.1 Definiton. Nilpotent transformation. A transformation $T \in A(V)$ is called
nilpotent if $T^{n}=0$ for some positive integer $n$. Further if $T^{r}=0$ and $T^{k} \neq 0$ for $\mathrm{k}<\mathrm{r}$, then T is nilpotent transformation with index of nilpotence r .
2.2.2 Theorem. Prove that all the characteristic roots of a nilpotent transformation T $\in A(V)$ lies in $F$.

Proof. Since T is nilpotent, let r be the index of nilpotence of T . Then $\mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{r}}=0$. Let $\lambda$ be the characteristic root of $T$, then there exist $v(\neq 0)$ in $V$ such that $\mathrm{vT}=\lambda \mathrm{v}$. As $\mathrm{vT}^{2}=(\mathrm{vT}) \mathrm{T}=(\lambda \mathrm{v}) \mathrm{T}=\lambda(\mathrm{vT})=\lambda \lambda \mathrm{v}=\lambda^{2} \mathrm{v}$. Therefore, continuing in this way we get $\mathrm{vT}^{3}=\lambda^{3} v, \ldots, \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{r}}=\lambda^{\mathrm{r}} \mathrm{v}$. Since $\mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{r}}=0$, hence $\mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{r}}=\mathrm{v} 0=0$ and hence $\lambda^{\mathrm{r}} \mathrm{v}=0$. But $\mathrm{v} \neq 0$, therefore, $\lambda^{\mathrm{r}}=0$ and hence $\lambda=0$, which all lies in F .
2.2.3 Theorem. If $\mathrm{T} \in \mathrm{A}(\mathrm{V})$ is nilpotent and $\beta_{0} \neq 0$, then $\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} \mathrm{~T}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{m}} ; \beta_{\mathrm{i}} \in \mathrm{F}$ is invertible.
Proof. If $S$ is nilpotent then $S^{r}=0$ for some integer $r$. Let $\beta_{0} \neq 0$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \quad\left(\beta_{0}+\mathrm{S}\right)\left(\frac{\mathrm{I}}{\beta_{0}}-\frac{\mathrm{S}}{\beta_{0}{ }^{2}}+\frac{\mathrm{S}^{2}}{\beta_{0}{ }^{3}}+\ldots+(-1)^{\mathrm{r}-1} \frac{\mathrm{~S}^{\mathrm{r}-1}}{\beta_{0}{ }^{\mathrm{r}}}\right) \\
& =\mathrm{I}-\frac{\mathrm{S}}{\beta_{0}}+\frac{\mathrm{S}}{\beta_{0}}-\frac{\mathrm{S}^{2}}{\beta_{0}{ }^{2}}+\frac{\mathrm{S}^{2}}{\beta_{0}{ }^{2}}+\ldots+(-1)^{\mathrm{r}-1} \frac{\mathrm{~S}^{\mathrm{r}-1}}{\beta_{0}{ }^{\mathrm{r}-1}}-(-1)^{\mathrm{r}-1} \frac{\mathrm{~S}^{\mathrm{r}-1}}{\beta_{0}{ }^{\mathrm{r}-1}}+(-1)^{\mathrm{r}-1} \frac{\mathrm{~S}^{\mathrm{r}}}{\beta_{0}{ }^{r}} \\
& = \\
& \mathrm{I} \text {. Hence }\left(\beta_{0}+\mathrm{S}\right) \text { is invertible. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Now if $\mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{k}}=0$, then for the transformation

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{S}=\beta_{1} \mathrm{~T}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{m}}, \\
& \mathrm{v} S^{\mathrm{k}}=\mathrm{v}\left(\beta_{1} \mathrm{~T}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{m}}\right)^{\mathrm{k}}=\mathrm{vT} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{k}}\left(\beta_{1}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{m}-1}\right)^{\mathrm{k}} \forall \mathrm{v} \in \mathrm{~V} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $\mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{k}}=0$, therefore, $\mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{k}}=0$ and hence $\mathrm{vS}^{\mathrm{k}}=0 \quad \forall \mathrm{v} \in \mathrm{V}$ i.e. $\mathrm{S}^{\mathrm{k}}=0$. Equivalently, $S^{k}$ is a nilpotent transformation. But then by above discussion $\beta_{0}+S=\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} T+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{m}}$ is invertible if $\beta_{0} \neq 0$. It proves the result.
2.2.4 Theorem. If $V=V_{1} \oplus V_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus V_{k}$ where each subspace $V_{i}$ of $V$ is of dimension $n_{i}$ and is invariant under $T \in A(V)$. Then a basis of $V$ can be found so that the
matrix of $T$ in this basis is of the form $\left[\begin{array}{ccccc}\mathrm{A}_{1} & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{~A}_{2} & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \mathrm{~A}_{3} & \ldots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & \mathrm{~A}_{\mathrm{k}}\end{array}\right]$ where each $A_{i}$ is an $n_{i} \times n_{i}$ matrix and is the matrix of linear transformation $T_{i}$ induced by $T$ on $V_{i}$.

Proof. Since each $V_{i}$ is of dimension $n_{i}$, let $\left\{v_{1}^{(1)}, v_{2}^{(1)}, \ldots, v_{n_{1}}^{(1)}\right\}$, $\left\{\mathrm{v}_{1}^{(2)}, \mathrm{v}_{2}^{(2)}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{2}}^{(2)}\right\}, \ldots,\left\{\mathrm{v}_{1}^{(\mathrm{i})}, \mathrm{v}_{2}^{(\mathrm{i})}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{i}}}^{(\mathrm{i})}\right\}, \ldots,\left\{\mathrm{v}_{1}^{(\mathrm{k})}, \mathrm{v}_{2}^{(\mathrm{k})}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{k}}}^{(\mathrm{k})}\right\}$ are the basis of $\mathrm{V}_{1}, \mathrm{~V}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{i}}, \ldots, \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{k}}$ respectively, over F . We will show that $\left\{\mathrm{v}_{1}^{(1)}, \mathrm{v}_{2}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{1}}^{(1)}, \mathrm{v}_{1}^{(2)}, \mathrm{v}_{2}^{(2)}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{2}}^{(2)}, \ldots, \quad \mathrm{v}_{1}^{(\mathrm{i})}, \mathrm{v}_{2}^{(\mathrm{i})}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{i}}}^{(\mathrm{i})}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{1}^{(\mathrm{k})}, \mathrm{v}_{2}^{(\mathrm{k})}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{k}}}^{(\mathrm{k})}\right\}$ is the basis of V. First we will show that these vectors are linearly independent over F. Let
$\overbrace{\alpha_{1}^{(1)} v_{1}^{(1)}+\alpha_{2}^{(1)} v_{2}^{(1)}+\ldots+\alpha_{n_{1}}^{(1)} v_{n_{1}}^{(1)}}+\overbrace{\alpha_{1}^{(2)} v_{1}^{(2)}+\alpha_{2}^{(2)} v_{2}^{(2)}+\ldots+\alpha_{n_{2}}^{(2)} v_{n_{2}}^{(2)}}+\ldots+$

$$
\overbrace{\alpha_{1}^{(i)} v_{1}^{(i)}+\alpha_{2}^{(i)} v_{2}^{(i)}+\ldots+\alpha_{n_{i}}^{(i)} v_{n_{i}}^{(i)}}^{(i)}+\overbrace{\alpha_{1}^{(k)} v_{1}^{(k)}+\alpha_{2}^{(k)} v_{2}^{(k)}+\ldots+\alpha_{n_{k}}^{(k)} v_{n_{k}}^{(k)}}=0 .
$$

But V is direct sum of $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}$ 's therefore, zero has unique representation i.e.
$0=0+0+\ldots+0+\ldots 0$. Hence $\overbrace{\alpha_{1}^{(i)} v_{1}^{(i)}+\alpha_{2}^{(i)} v_{2}^{(i)}+\ldots+\alpha_{n_{i}}^{(i)} v_{n_{i}}^{(i)}}=0$ for $1 \leq i \leq k$. But for $1 \leq i \leq k, v_{1}^{(i)}, v_{2}^{(i)}, \ldots, v_{n_{i}}^{(i)}$ are linearly independent over F. Hence $\alpha_{1}^{(\mathrm{i})}=\alpha_{2}^{(\mathrm{i})}=\ldots=\alpha_{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{i}}}^{(\mathrm{i})}=0$ and hence $\mathrm{v}_{1}^{(1)}, \mathrm{v}_{2}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{1}}^{(1)}, \mathrm{v}_{1}^{(2)}, \mathrm{v}_{2}^{(2)}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{2}}^{(2)}, \ldots$, $\mathrm{v}_{1}^{(\mathrm{i})}, \mathrm{v}_{2}^{(\mathrm{i})}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{i}}}^{(\mathrm{i})}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{1}^{(\mathrm{k})}, \mathrm{v}_{2}^{(\mathrm{k})}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{k}}}^{(\mathrm{k})}$ are linearly independent over F. More over for $\mathrm{v} \in \mathrm{V}$, there exist $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} \in \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}$ such that $\mathrm{v}=\mathrm{v}_{1}+\mathrm{v}_{2}+\ldots+\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}}+\ldots+\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{k}}$. But for $1 \leq$ $\mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{k}, \quad \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}}=\alpha_{1}^{(\mathrm{i})} \mathrm{v}_{1}^{(i)}+\alpha_{2}^{(\mathrm{i})} \mathrm{v}_{2}^{(\mathrm{i})}+\ldots+\alpha_{n_{i}}^{(\mathrm{i})} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{i}}}^{(\mathrm{i})} ; \quad$ for $1 \leq \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{i}} \leq \mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{i}}, \quad \alpha_{j}^{(\mathrm{i})} \in \mathrm{F}$. Hence $\mathrm{v}=\alpha_{1}^{(1)} \mathrm{v}_{1}^{(1)}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{n}_{1}}^{(1)} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{1}}^{(1)}+\ldots+\alpha_{1}^{(k)} \mathrm{v}_{1}^{(k)}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{k}}}^{(\mathrm{k})} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{k}}}^{(\mathrm{k})}$. In other words we can say that every element of V is linear combination of $\mathrm{v}_{1}^{(1)}, \mathrm{v}_{2}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{1}}^{(1)}$,
$v_{1}^{(2)}, v_{2}^{(2)}, \ldots, v_{n_{2}}^{(2)}, \ldots, v_{1}^{(i)}, v_{2}^{(i)}, \ldots, v_{n_{i}}^{(i)}, \ldots, v_{1}^{(k)}, v_{2}^{(k)}, \ldots, v_{n_{k}}^{(k)}$ over F. Hence $\left\{\mathrm{v}_{1}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{1}}^{(1)}, \mathrm{v}_{1}^{(2)}, \mathrm{v}_{2}^{(2)}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{2}}^{(2)}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{1}^{(\mathrm{i})}, \mathrm{v}_{2}^{(\mathrm{i})}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{i}}}^{(\mathrm{i})}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{1}^{(\mathrm{k})}, \mathrm{v}_{2}^{(\mathrm{k})}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{k}}}^{(\mathrm{k})}\right\}$ is a basis for $V$ over $F$. Define $T_{i}$ on $V_{i}$ by setting $v_{i} T_{i}=v_{i} T \forall v_{i} \in V_{i}$. Then $T_{i}$ is a linear transformation on $V_{i}$. Since $V_{i}$ are linealy independent, therefore, For obtaining $\mathrm{m}(\mathrm{T})$ we proceed as:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{v}_{1}^{(1)} \mathrm{T}=\alpha_{11}^{(1)} \mathrm{v}_{1}^{(1)}+\alpha_{12}^{(1)} \mathrm{v}_{1}^{(1)} \ldots+\alpha_{1_{1}}^{(1)} v_{n_{1}}^{(1)} \\
& =\overbrace{\alpha_{11}^{(1)} v_{1}^{(1)}+\alpha_{12}^{(1)} v_{1}^{(1)} \ldots+\alpha_{1 n_{1}}^{(1)} v_{n_{1}}^{(1)}}^{(1)}+0 . v_{1}^{(2)}+\ldots+0 . v_{n_{2}}^{(2)}+0 . v_{1}^{(k)}+\ldots+0 . v_{n_{k}}^{(k)} . \\
& v_{2}^{(1)} T=\alpha_{21}^{(1)} v_{1}^{(1)}+\alpha_{22}^{(1)} v_{1}^{(1)} \ldots+\alpha_{2 n_{1}}^{(1)} v_{n_{1}}^{(1)} \\
& =\overbrace{\alpha_{21}^{(1)} v_{1}^{(1)}+\alpha_{22}^{(1)} v_{1}^{(1)} \ldots+\alpha_{2 n_{1}}^{(1)} v_{n_{1}}^{(1)}}^{(1)}+0 . v_{1}^{(2)}+\ldots+0 . v_{n_{2}}^{(2)}+0 . v_{1}^{(k)}+\ldots+0 . v_{n_{k}}^{(k)} . \\
& \ldots \\
& \ldots \\
& \ldots \\
& v_{n_{1}}^{(1)} T=\alpha_{n_{1} 1}^{(1)} v_{1}^{(1)}+\alpha_{n_{1} 2}^{(1)} v_{1}^{(1)} \ldots+\alpha_{n_{1} n_{1}}^{(1)} v_{n_{1}}^{(1)} \\
& =\overbrace{\alpha_{n_{1} 1}^{(1)} v_{1}^{(1)}+\alpha_{n_{1} 2}^{(1)} v_{1}^{(1)} \ldots+\alpha_{n_{1} n_{1}}^{(1)} v_{n_{1}}^{(1)}}^{(1)}+0 . v_{1}^{(2)}+\ldots+0 . v_{n_{2}}^{(2)}+0 . v_{1}^{(k)}+\ldots+0 . v_{n_{k}}^{(k)} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Since it is easy to see that $\mathrm{m}\left(\mathrm{T}_{1}\right)=\left[\alpha_{\mathrm{ij}}^{(1)}\right]_{\mathrm{n}_{1} \times \mathrm{n}_{1}}=\mathrm{A}_{1}$. Therefore, role of T on $\mathrm{V}_{1}$ produces a part of $m(T)$ given by $\left[A_{1} 0\right]$, here 0 is a zero matrix of order $n_{1} \times n-$ $n_{1}$. Similarly part of $m(T)$ obtained by the roll of $T$ on $V_{2}$ is [ $\left.0 A_{2} 0\right]$, here first 0 is a zero matrix of order $\mathrm{n}_{1} \times \mathrm{n}_{1}, \mathrm{~A}_{2}=\left[\alpha_{\mathrm{ij}}^{(2)}\right]_{\mathrm{n}_{2} \times \mathrm{n}_{2}}$ and the last zero is a zero matrix of order $n_{1} \times n-n_{1}-n_{2}$. Continuing in this way we get that

$$
\left[\begin{array}{ccccc}
\mathrm{A}_{1} & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\
0 & \mathrm{~A}_{2} & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\
0 & 0 & \mathrm{~A}_{3} & \ldots & 0 \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\
0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & \mathrm{~A}_{\mathrm{k}}
\end{array}\right] \text { as required. }
$$

2.2.5 Theorem. If $T \in A(V)$ is nilpotent with index of nilpotence $n_{1}$, then there always exists subspaces $\mathrm{V}_{1}$ and W invariant under T so that $\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{V}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{~W}$.

Proof. For proving the theorem, first we prove some lemmas:
Lemma 1. If $T \in A(V)$ is nilpotent with index of nilpotence $n_{1}$, then there always exists subspace $V_{1}$ of $V$ of dimension $n_{1}$ which is invariant under $T$.

Proof. Since index of nilpotence of T is $\mathrm{n}_{1}$, therefore, $\mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}}=0$ and $\mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{k}} \neq 0$ for $1 \leq \mathrm{k} \leq \mathrm{n}_{1}-1$. Let $\mathrm{v}(\neq 0) \in \mathrm{V}$. Consider the elements $\mathrm{v}, \mathrm{vT}, \mathrm{vT}^{2}, \ldots \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-1}$ of V . Take $\alpha_{1} \mathrm{v}+\alpha_{2} \mathrm{vT}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{vT}{ }^{(\mathrm{s}-1)}+\ldots+\alpha_{n_{1}} \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-1}=0, \alpha_{i} \in \mathrm{~F}$ and let $\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}$ be the first non zero element in above equation. Hence $\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{vT}^{(\mathrm{s}-1)}+\ldots+\alpha_{n_{1}} \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-1}=0$. But then $\mathrm{vT}^{(\mathrm{s}-1)}\left(\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}+\ldots+\alpha_{n_{1}} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-\mathrm{s}}\right)=0 . \mathrm{As}$ $\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} \neq 0$ and T is nilpotent, therefore, $\left(\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{n}_{1}} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-\mathrm{s}}\right)$ is invertible and hence $\mathrm{vT}^{(\mathrm{s}-1)}=0 \forall \mathrm{v} \in \mathrm{V}$ i.e. $\mathrm{T}^{(\mathrm{s}-1)}=0$ for some integer less than $\mathrm{n}_{1}$, a contradiction. Hence each $\alpha_{i}=0$. It means elements $\mathrm{v}, \mathrm{vT}, \mathrm{vT}^{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-1}$ are linearly independent over F . Let $\mathrm{V}_{1}$ be the space generated by the elements v , $\mathrm{vT}, \mathrm{vT}^{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-1}$. Then the dimension of $\mathrm{V}_{1}$ over F is $\mathrm{n}_{1}$. Let $\mathrm{u} \in \mathrm{V}_{1}$, then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{u}=\beta_{1} \mathrm{v}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{n}_{1}-1} \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-2}+\beta_{\mathrm{n}_{1}} \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-1} \text { and } \\
& \mathrm{uT}=\beta_{1} \mathrm{v}+\ldots+\beta_{\mathrm{n}_{1}-1} \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-1}+\beta_{\mathrm{n}_{1}} \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}}=\beta_{1} \mathrm{v}+\ldots+\beta_{n_{1}-1} \mathrm{vT}^{n_{1}-1}
\end{aligned}
$$

i.e. $u T$ is also a linear combination of $v, v T, \mathrm{vT}^{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-1}$ over F. Hence $u T \in V_{1}$. i.e. $V_{1}$ is invariant under $T$.

Lemma(2). If $\mathrm{V}_{1}$ is subspace of V spanned by $\mathrm{v}, \mathrm{vT}, \mathrm{vT}^{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-1}, \mathrm{~T} \in \mathrm{~A}(\mathrm{~V})$ is nilpotent with index of nilptence $n_{1}$ and $u \in V_{1}$ is such that $u T^{n_{1}-k}=0 ; 0<$ $\mathrm{k} \leq \mathrm{n}_{1}$, then $\mathrm{u}=\mathrm{u}_{0} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{k}}$ for some $\mathrm{u}_{0} \in \mathrm{~V}_{1}$.

Proof. For $u \in V_{1}, u=\alpha_{1} v+\ldots+\alpha_{k} v T^{(k-1)}+\alpha_{k+1} v T^{k} \ldots+\alpha_{n_{1}} v T^{n_{1}-1} ; \alpha_{i} \in F$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{and} 0=\mathrm{uT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-\mathrm{k}} & =\left(\alpha_{1} \mathrm{v}+\ldots+\alpha_{k} \mathrm{vT}^{(\mathrm{k}-1)}+\alpha_{\mathrm{k}+1} \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{k}} \ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{n}_{1}} \mathrm{VT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-1}\right) \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-\mathrm{k}} \\
& =\alpha_{1} \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-\mathrm{k}}+\ldots+\alpha_{k} \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-1}+\alpha_{\mathrm{k}+1} \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}} \ldots+\alpha_{n_{1}} \mathrm{vT}^{2 \mathrm{n}_{1}-\mathrm{k}-1} \\
& =\alpha_{1} \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-\mathrm{k}}+\ldots+\alpha_{k} \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-1} . \text { Since } \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-\mathrm{k}}+\ldots+\mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-1} \text { are }
\end{aligned}
$$

linearly independent over $F$, therefore, $\alpha_{1}=\ldots=\alpha_{k}=0$. But then
$\mathrm{u}=\alpha_{\mathrm{k}+1} \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{k}}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{n}_{1}} \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-1}=\left(\alpha_{\mathrm{k}+1} \mathrm{v}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{n}_{1}} \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-\mathrm{k}}\right) \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{k}}$.
Put $\alpha_{k+1} v+\ldots+\alpha_{n_{1}} v T^{n_{1}-k}=u_{0}$. Then $u=u_{0} T^{k}$. It proves the lemma.

Proof of Theorem. Since T is nilpotent with index of nilpotence $n_{1}$, then by Lemma 3, there always exist a subspace $\mathrm{V}_{1}$ of V generated by v , $\mathrm{vT}, \mathrm{vT}^{2}, \ldots$, $\mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-1}$. Let W be the subspace of V of maximal dimension such that
(i) $\mathrm{V}_{1} \cap \mathrm{~W}=(0)$ and (ii) W is invariant under T .

We will show that $\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{V}_{1}+\mathrm{W}$. Let if possible $\mathrm{V} \neq \mathrm{V}_{1}+\mathrm{W}$. then there exist $\mathrm{z} \in \mathrm{V}$ such that $\mathrm{z} \notin \mathrm{V}_{1}+\mathrm{W}$. Since $\mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}}=0$, therefore, $\mathrm{zT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}}=0$. But then there exist an integer $0<\mathrm{k} \leq \mathrm{n}_{1}$ such that $\mathrm{zT}^{\mathrm{k}} \in \mathrm{V}_{1}+\mathrm{W}$ and $\mathrm{zT}^{\mathrm{i}} \notin \mathrm{V}_{1}+\mathrm{W}$ for $0<\mathrm{i}<\mathrm{k}$. Let $\mathrm{zT}^{\mathrm{k}}=\mathrm{u}+\mathrm{w}$. Since $0=\mathrm{zT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}}=\mathrm{z}\left(\mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-\mathrm{k}}\right)=\left(\mathrm{zT} \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{k}}\right) \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-\mathrm{k}}=(\mathrm{u}+\mathrm{w}) \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-\mathrm{k}}=$ $\mathrm{uT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-\mathrm{k}}+\mathrm{wT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-\mathrm{k}}$, therefore, $\mathrm{uT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-\mathrm{k}}=-\mathrm{wT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-\mathrm{k}}$. But then $\mathrm{uT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-\mathrm{k}} \in \mathrm{V}_{1}$ and W. Hence $u T^{n_{1}-k}=0$. By Lemma $3, u=u_{0} T^{k}$ for some $u_{0} \in V_{1}$. Hence $\mathrm{zT}^{\mathrm{k}}=\mathrm{u}_{0} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{k}}+\mathrm{w}$ or $\left(\mathrm{z}-\mathrm{u}_{0}\right) \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{k}} \in \mathrm{W}$. Take $\mathrm{z}_{1}=\mathrm{z}-\mathrm{u}_{0}$, then $\mathrm{z}_{1} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{k}} \in \mathrm{W}$. Further, for $\mathrm{i}<\mathrm{k}, \mathrm{z}_{1} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{i}} \notin \mathrm{W}$ because if $\mathrm{z}_{1} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{i}} \in \mathrm{W}$, then $\mathrm{zT}^{\mathrm{i}}-\mathrm{u}_{0} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{i}} \in \mathrm{W}$. Equivalently, $\mathrm{zT}^{\mathrm{i}} \in \mathrm{V}_{1}+\mathrm{W}, \quad \mathrm{a}$ contradiction to our earlier assumption that $\mathrm{i}<\mathrm{k}$, $\mathrm{zT}^{\mathrm{i}} \notin \mathrm{V}_{1}+\mathrm{W}$.

Let $\mathrm{W}_{1}$ be the subspace generated by $\mathrm{W}, \mathrm{z}_{1}, \mathrm{z}_{1} \mathrm{~T}, \mathrm{z}_{1} \mathrm{~T}^{2}, \ldots$, $\mathrm{z}_{1} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{k}-1}$. Since $\mathrm{z}_{1}$ does not belongs to W , therefore, W is properly contained in $W_{1}$ and hence $\operatorname{dim}_{F} W_{1}>\operatorname{dim}_{F} W$. Since $W$ is invariant under T, therefore, $W_{1}$ is also invariant under $T$. Now by induction hypothesis, $\mathrm{V}_{1} \cap \mathrm{~W}_{1} \neq(0)$. Let $\mathrm{w}+\alpha_{1} \mathrm{z}_{1}+\alpha_{2} \mathrm{z}_{1} \mathrm{~T}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{z}_{1} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{k}-1}$ be a non zero element belonging to $\mathrm{V}_{1} \cap \mathrm{~W}_{1}$. Here all $\alpha_{i}$ 's are not zero because then $\mathrm{V}_{1} \cap \mathrm{~W} \neq(0)$. Let $\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}$ be the first non zero $\alpha_{i}$. Then

$$
\mathrm{w}+\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{z}_{1} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{s}-1}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{z}_{1} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{k}-1}=\mathrm{w}+\mathrm{z}_{1} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{s}-1}\left(\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{k}-\mathrm{s}}\right) \in \mathrm{V}_{1}
$$

Since $\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} \neq 0$, therefore, $\mathrm{R}=\left(\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}+\ldots+\alpha_{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{k}-\mathrm{s}}\right)$ is invertible and hence
$w R^{-1}+z_{1} T^{s-1} \in V_{1} R^{-1} \subseteq V_{1}$. Equivalently, $z_{1} T^{s-1} \in V_{1}+W$, a contradiction. This contradiction proves that $\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{V}_{1}+\mathrm{W}$. Hence $\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{V}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{~W}$.
2.2.6 Theorem. If $T \in A(V)$ is nilpotent with index of nilpotence $n_{1}$, then there exist subspace $V_{1}, V_{2}, \ldots, V_{r}$, of dimensions $n_{1}, n_{2}, \ldots, n_{r}$ respectively, each $V_{i}$ is invariant under $T$ such that $V=V_{1} \oplus V_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus V_{r}, n_{1} \geq n_{2} \geq \ldots \geq n_{r}$ and $\operatorname{dim} V=$ $\mathrm{n}_{1}+\mathrm{n}_{2}+\ldots+\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{r}}$. More over we can find a basis of V over F in which matrix of T is of the form $\left[\begin{array}{ccccc}\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{n}_{1}} & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{n} 2} & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{n}_{3}} & \ldots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{r}}}\end{array}\right]$.

Proof. First we prove a lemma. If $\mathrm{T} \in \mathrm{A}(\mathrm{V})$ is nilpotent with index of nilpotence $\mathrm{n}_{1}, \mathrm{~V}_{1}$ is a subspace of V spanned by $\mathrm{v}, \mathrm{vT}, \mathrm{vT}^{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-1}$ where $v \in V$. Then $M_{n_{1}}$ will be the matrix of $T$ on $V_{1}$ under the basis $v_{1}=v$, $\mathrm{v}_{2}=\mathrm{vT}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{1}}=\mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-1}$.

Proof. Since

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{v}_{1} \mathrm{~T}=0 . \mathrm{v}_{1}+1 . \mathrm{v}_{2}+\ldots+0 . \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{1}} \\
& \mathrm{v}_{2} \mathrm{~T}=(\mathrm{vT}) \mathrm{T}=\mathrm{vT}^{2}=\mathrm{v}_{3}=0 . \mathrm{v}_{1}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{2}+1 . \mathrm{v}_{3}+\ldots+0 . \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{1}} \\
& \ldots \\
& \ldots \\
& \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{1}-1} \mathrm{~T}=\left(\mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-2}\right) \mathrm{T}=\mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-1}=\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{1}}=0 . \mathrm{v}_{1}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{2}+\ldots+1 \cdot \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{1}} \text { and } \\
& \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{1}} \mathrm{~T}_{1}=\left(\mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-1}\right) \mathrm{T}=\mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}}=0=0 . \mathrm{v}_{1}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{2}+\ldots+0 . \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{n}_{1}} \text {, therefore, }
\end{aligned}
$$

the matrix of T under the basis $\mathrm{v}, \mathrm{vT}, \mathrm{vT}^{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{vT}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}-1}$ is

$$
\left[\begin{array}{ccccc}
0 & 1 & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & \ldots & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots & & 1 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0
\end{array}\right]_{\mathrm{n}_{1} \times \mathrm{n}_{1}}=\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{n}_{1}}
$$

Proof of main theorem. Since by Theorem 2.2.5, If $T \in A(V)$ is nilpotent with index of nilpotence $n_{1}$, then there always exists subspaces $V_{1}$ and $W$, invariant under $T$ so that $V=\mathrm{V}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{~W}$. Now let $\mathrm{T}_{2}$ be the transformation induced by T on W . Then $\mathrm{T}_{2}^{\mathrm{n}_{1}}=0$ on W . But then there exist an integer $\mathrm{n}_{2}$ such that $\mathrm{n}_{2} \leq \mathrm{n}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{n}_{2}$ is index of nilpotene of $\mathrm{T}_{2}$. But then we can write $\mathrm{W}=$ $\mathrm{V}_{2} \oplus \mathrm{~W}_{1}$ where $\mathrm{V}_{2}$ is subspace of V spanned by $\mathrm{u}, \mathrm{uT}_{2}, \mathrm{uT}_{2}^{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{uT}_{2}^{\mathrm{n}_{2}-1}$ where $\mathrm{u} \in \mathrm{V}$ and $\mathrm{W}_{1}$ is invariant subspace of V . Continuing in this way we get that

$$
\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{V}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{k}}
$$

Where each $V_{i}$ is $n_{i}$ dimensional invariant subspace of $V$ on which the matrix of T (i.e. matrix of T obtained by using basis of $V_{i}$ ) is $M_{n_{i}}$ where $n_{1} \geq n_{2} \geq \ldots \geq$ $\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{k}}$ and $\mathrm{n}_{1}+\mathrm{n}_{2}+\ldots+\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{k}}=\mathrm{n}=\operatorname{dim} \mathrm{V}$. Since $\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{V}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{k}}$, therefore, by Theorem 2.2.4, the matrix of T i.e.

$$
\mathrm{m}(\mathrm{~T})=\left[\begin{array}{ccccc}
\mathrm{A}_{1} & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\
0 & \mathrm{~A}_{2} & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\
0 & 0 & \mathrm{~A}_{3} & \ldots & 0 \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\
0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & \mathrm{~A}_{\mathrm{k}}
\end{array}\right] \text { where each } \mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{i}}=\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{i}}} . \text { It proves the theorem. }
$$

2.2.8 Definition. Let $T \in A(V)$ is nilpotent transformation with index of nilpotence $n_{1}$. Then there exist subspace $V_{1}, V_{2}, \ldots, V_{k}$ of dimensions $n_{1}, n_{2}, \ldots, n_{k}$ respectively, each $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is invariant under T such that $\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{V}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{k}}, \mathrm{n}_{1} \geq$ $\mathrm{n}_{2} \geq \ldots \geq \mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{k}}$ and $\operatorname{dim} \mathrm{V}=\mathrm{n}_{1}+\mathrm{n}_{2}+\ldots+\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{k}}$. These integers $\mathrm{n}_{1}, \mathrm{n}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{k}}$ are called invariants of T.
2.2.9 Definition. Cyclic subspace. A subspace $M$ of dimension $m$ is called cyclic with respect to $\mathrm{T} \in \mathrm{A}(\mathrm{V})$ if
(i) $\mathrm{MT}^{\mathrm{m}}=0, \quad \mathrm{MT}^{\mathrm{m}-1} \neq 0$
(ii) there exist x in M such that $\mathrm{x}, \mathrm{xT}, \ldots, \mathrm{xT}^{\mathrm{m}-1}$ forms basis of M .
2.2.10 Theorem. If M is cyclic subspace with respect to T then the dimension of $\mathrm{MT}^{\mathrm{k}}$ is $\mathrm{m}-\mathrm{k}$ for all $\mathrm{k} \leq \mathrm{m}$.

Proof. Since M is cyclic with respect to T, therefore, there exist x in M such that $\mathrm{x}, \mathrm{xT}, \ldots, \mathrm{xT}^{\mathrm{m}-1}$ is a basis of M . But then $\mathrm{z} \in \mathrm{M}$,

$$
\mathrm{z}=\mathrm{a}_{1} \mathrm{x}+\mathrm{a}_{2} \mathrm{xT}+\ldots+\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{m}} \times \mathrm{xT}^{\mathrm{m}-1} ; \mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{i}} \in \mathrm{~F}
$$

Equivalently, $\mathrm{zT}^{\mathrm{k}}=\mathrm{a}_{1} \mathrm{xT}^{\mathrm{k}}+\mathrm{a}_{2} \mathrm{xT}^{\mathrm{k}+1}+\ldots+\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{m}-\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{xT}^{\mathrm{m}-1}+. .+\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{xT}^{\mathrm{m}+\mathrm{k}}=\mathrm{a}_{1} x \mathrm{X}^{\mathrm{k}}+$ $\mathrm{a}_{2} \mathrm{xT}^{\mathrm{k}+1}+\ldots+\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{m}-\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{xT}^{\mathrm{m}-1}$. Hence every element z of $\mathrm{MT}^{\mathrm{k}}$ is linear combination of m-k elements $\mathrm{xT}^{\mathrm{k}}, \mathrm{xT}^{\mathrm{k}+1}, \ldots, \mathrm{xT}^{\mathrm{m}-1}$. Being a subset of linearly independent set these are linearly independent also. Hence the dimension of $\mathrm{MT}^{\mathrm{k}}$ is $\mathrm{m}-\mathrm{k}$ for all k.
2.2.11 Theorem. Prove that invariants of a nilpotent transformation are unique.

Proof. Let if possible there are two sets of invariant $\mathrm{n}_{1}, \mathrm{n}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{r}}$ and $\mathrm{m}_{1}, \mathrm{~m}_{2}$, $\ldots, \mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{r}}$ of T . Then $\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{V}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{r}}$ and $\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{W}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{~W}_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{~W}_{\mathrm{s}}$, where each $V_{i}$ and $W_{i}$ 's are cyclic subspaces of $V$ of dimension $n_{i}$ and $m_{i}$ respectively, We will show that $\mathrm{r}=\mathrm{s}$ and $\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{i}}=\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{i}}$. Suppose that k be the first integer such that $n_{k} \neq m_{k}$. i.e. $n_{1}=m_{1}, n_{2}=m_{2}, \ldots, n_{k-1}=m_{k-1}$. Without loss of generality suppose that $\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{k}}>\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}$. Consider $\mathrm{VT}^{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}}$. Then

$$
\mathrm{VT}^{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}}=\mathrm{V}_{1} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}} \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{2} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{r}} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}} \text { and }
$$

$\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathrm{VT}^{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}}\right)=\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathrm{V}_{1} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}}\right)+\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathrm{V}_{2} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}}\right)+\ldots+\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{r}} \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}}\right)$. As by Theorem 2.2.10, $\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}}\right)=\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{i}}-\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}$, therefore,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathrm{VT}^{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}}\right) \geq\left(\mathrm{n}_{1}-\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}\right)+\ldots+\left(\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{k}-1}-\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}\right) \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Similarly $\quad \operatorname{dim}\left(\mathrm{VT}^{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}}\right)=\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathrm{W}_{1} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}}\right)+\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathrm{W}_{2} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}}\right)+\ldots+\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathrm{W}_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}}\right) . \quad$ As $m_{j} \leq m_{k}$ for $j \geq k$, therefore, $W_{j} T^{m_{k}}=\{0\}$ subspace and then $\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathrm{W}_{\mathrm{j}} \mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}}\right)=0$. Hence $\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathrm{VT}^{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}}\right) \geq\left(\mathrm{m}_{1}-\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}\right)+\ldots+\left(\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}-1}-\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}\right)$. Since $\mathrm{n}_{1}=\mathrm{m}_{1}, \quad \mathrm{n}_{2}=\mathrm{m}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{k}-1} \quad=\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}-1}, \quad$ therefore, $\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathrm{VT}^{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}}\right)=\left(\mathrm{n}_{1}-\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}\right)+\ldots+\left(\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{k}-1}-\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}\right)$, contradicting (1). Hence $\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{i}}=\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{i}}$. Further $\mathrm{n}_{1}+\mathrm{n}_{2}+\ldots+\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{r}}=\operatorname{dim} \mathrm{V}=\mathrm{m}_{1}+\mathrm{m}_{2}+\ldots+\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{s}}$ and $\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{i}}=\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{i}}$ for all i implies that $\mathrm{r}=\mathrm{s}$. It proves the theorem.
2.2.12 Theorem. Prove that transformations $S$ and $T \in A(V)$ are similar iff they have same invariants.

Proof. First suppose that S and T are similar i.e. there exist a regular mapping $R$ such that $R T R^{-1}=S$. Let $n_{1}, n_{2}, \ldots, n_{r}$ be the invariants of $S$ and $m_{1}, m_{2}, \ldots$, $\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{s}}$ are that of T . Then $\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{V}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{r}}$ and $\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{W}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{~W}_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{~W}_{\mathrm{s}}$, where each $V_{i}$ and $W_{i}$ 's are cyclic and invariant subspaces of $V$ of dimension $n_{i}$ and $m_{i}$ respectively, We will show that $\mathrm{r}=\mathrm{s}$ and $\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{i}}=\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{i}}$.
As $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{S} \subseteq \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}$, therefore, $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}\left(\mathrm{RTR}^{-1}\right) \subseteq \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}} \Rightarrow\left(\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{R}\right)\left(\mathrm{TR}^{-1}\right) \subseteq \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}$. Put $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{R}=\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{i}}$. Since $R$ is regular, therefore, $\operatorname{dim} U_{i}=\operatorname{dim}_{i}=n_{i}$. Further $U_{i} T=V_{i} R T=V_{i} S R$. As $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{S} \subseteq \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}$, therefore, $\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{T} \subseteq \mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{i}}$. Equivalently we have shown that $\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is invariant under T. More over

$$
\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{VR}=\mathrm{V}_{1} \mathrm{R} \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{2} \mathrm{R} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{r}} \mathrm{R}=\mathrm{U}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{U}_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{r}} .
$$

Now we will show that each $U_{i}$ is cyclic with respect to $T$. Since each $V_{i}$ is cyclic with respect to $S$ and is of dimension $n_{i}$, therefore, for $v \in V_{i}$, $v$, $\mathrm{vS}, \ldots, \mathrm{vS}^{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{i}}-1}$ is basis of $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}$ over F . As $R$ is regular transformation on $V$, therefore, $v R, v S R, \ldots, v S^{n_{i}-1} R$ is also a basis of V. Further $S=R T R^{-1} \Rightarrow$ $\mathrm{SR}=\mathrm{RT} \Rightarrow \mathrm{S}^{2} \mathrm{R}=\mathrm{S}(\mathrm{SR})=\mathrm{S}(\mathrm{RT})=(\mathrm{SR}) \mathrm{T}=\mathrm{RTT}=\mathrm{RT}^{2}$. Similarly we have $S^{t} R=R T^{t}$. Hence $\left\{v R, v S R, \ldots, v S^{n_{i}-1} R\right\}=\left\{v R, v R T, \ldots, v R T^{n_{i}-1}\right\}$. Now $v R$ lies in $U_{i}$ whose dimension is $n_{i}$ and $v R, v R T, \ldots, v R T^{n_{i}-1}$ are $n_{i}$ elements linearly independent in $\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{i}}$, the set $\left\{\mathrm{vR}, \mathrm{vRT}, \ldots, \mathrm{vRT}^{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{i}}-1}\right\}$ becomes a basis of $U_{i}$. Hence $U_{i}$ is cyclic with respect to $T$. Hence invariant of $T$ are $n_{1}, n_{2}, \ldots, n_{r}$. As by Theorem 2.2.11, the invariants of nilpotents transformations are unique, therefore, $\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{i}}=\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{i}}$ and $\mathrm{r}=\mathrm{s}$.

Conversely, suppose that two nilpotent transformations R and S have same invariants. We will show that they are similar. As they have same invariants, therefore, there exist two basis say $\mathrm{X}=\left\{\mathrm{x}_{1}, \mathrm{x}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{n}}\right\}$ and $\mathrm{Y}=\left\{\mathrm{y}_{1}\right.$, $\left.y_{2}, \ldots, y_{n}\right\}$ of $V$ such that the matrix of $S$ under $X$ is equal to matrix of $T$ under $Y$ is same. Let it be $A=\left[a_{i j}\right]_{n \times n}$. Define a regular mapping $R: V \rightarrow V$ by $x_{i} R=y_{i}$.

$$
\text { As } x_{i}\left(R T R^{-1}\right)=x_{i} R\left(T^{-1}\right)=y_{i} T R^{-1}=\left(y_{i} T\right) R^{-1}=\left(\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j} y_{j}\right) R^{-1}=
$$

$=\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j}\left(y_{j} R^{-1}\right)=\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{i j} x_{j}=x_{i} S$. Hence $R T R^{-1}=S$ i.e. $S$ and $T$ are similar.

### 2.3 CANONICAL FORM(JORDAN FORM)

2.3.1 Definition. Let $W$ be a subspace of $V$ invariant under $T \in A(V)$, then the mapping $\mathrm{T}_{1}$ defined by $\mathrm{w}_{1}=\mathrm{wT}$ is called the transformation induced by T on W.
2.3.2 Note.(i) Since $W$ is invariant under $T$ and $w T=w T_{1}$, therefore, $\mathrm{wT}^{2}=(w T) T=$ $(\mathrm{wT}) \mathrm{T}_{1}=\left(\mathrm{wT}_{1}\right) \mathrm{T}_{1}=\mathrm{w} \mathrm{T}_{1}{ }^{2} \forall \mathrm{w} \in \mathrm{W}$. Hence $\mathrm{T}^{2}=\mathrm{T}_{1}{ }^{2}$. Continuing in this way we get $\mathrm{T}^{\mathrm{k}}=\mathrm{T}_{1}{ }^{\mathrm{k}}$. Hence on $\mathrm{W}, \mathrm{q}(\mathrm{T})=\mathrm{q}\left(\mathrm{T}_{1}\right)$ for all $\mathrm{q}(\mathrm{x}) \in \mathrm{F}[\mathrm{x}]$.
(ii) Further it is easy to see that if $\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{x})$ is minimal polynomial of T and $\mathrm{r}(\mathrm{T})=0$, then $\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{x})$ always divides $\mathrm{r}(\mathrm{x})$.
2.3.3 Lemma. Let $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ be two invariant subspaces of finite dimensional vector space V over F such that $\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{V}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{2}$. Further let $\mathrm{T}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{T}_{2}$ be the linear transformations induced by $T$ on $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ respectively. If $p(x)$ and $q(x)$ are minimal polynomials of $\mathrm{T}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{T}_{2}$ respectively, then the minimal polynomial for $T$ over $F$ is the least common multiple of $p(x)$ and $q(x)$.

Proof. Let $\mathrm{h}(\mathrm{x})=\operatorname{lcm}(\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{x}), \mathrm{q}(\mathrm{x}))$ and $\mathrm{r}(\mathrm{x})$ be the minimal polynomial of T . Then $r(T)=0$. By Note 3.2(i), $r\left(T_{1}\right)=0$ and $r\left(T_{2}\right)=0$. By Note 3.2(ii), $p(x) \mid r(x)$ and $q(x) \mid r(x)$. Hence $h(x) \mid r(x)$. Now we will show that $r(x) \mid h(x)$. By the assumptions made in the statement of lemma we have $p\left(T_{1}\right)=0$ and $q\left(T_{2}\right)=0$. Since $h(x)=\operatorname{lcm}(p(x), q(x))$, therefore, $h(x)=p(x) t_{1}(x)$ and $h(x)=p(x) t_{2}(x)$, where $\mathrm{t}_{1}(\mathrm{x})$ and $\mathrm{t}_{2}(\mathrm{x})$ belongs to $\mathrm{F}[\mathrm{x}]$.

As $\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{V}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{2}$, therefore, for $\mathrm{v} \in \mathrm{V}$ we have unique $\mathrm{v}_{1} \in \mathrm{~V}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{v}_{2} \in \mathrm{~V}_{2}$ such that $v^{\prime}=v_{1}+v_{2}$. Now $\operatorname{vh}(T)=v_{1} h(T)+v_{2} h(T)=v_{1} h\left(T_{1}\right)+v_{2} h\left(T_{2}\right)=$ $v_{1} p\left(T_{1}\right) t_{1}\left(T_{1}\right)+v_{2} p\left(T_{2}\right) t_{2}\left(T_{2}\right)=0+0=0$. Since the result holds for all $v \in V$, therefore, $\mathrm{h}(\mathrm{T})=0$ on V . But then by Note 2.3.2(ii), $\mathrm{r}(\mathrm{x}) \mid \mathrm{h}(\mathrm{x})$. Now $\mathrm{h}(\mathrm{x}) \mid \mathrm{r}(\mathrm{x})$ and $r(x) \mid h(x)$ implies that $h(x)=r(x)$. It proves the lemma.
2.3.4 Corollary. Let $V_{1}, V_{2}, \ldots, V_{k}$ are invariant subspaces of finite dimensional vector space V over F such that $\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{V}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{k}}$. Further let $\mathrm{T}_{1}, \mathrm{~T}_{2}, \ldots$, $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{k}}$ be the linear transformations induced by T on $\mathrm{V}_{1}, \mathrm{~V}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{k}}$ respectively. If $\mathrm{p}_{1}(\mathrm{x}), \mathrm{p}_{2}(\mathrm{x}), \ldots, \mathrm{p}_{\mathrm{k}}(\mathrm{x})$ are their respective minimal polynomials. Then the
minimal polynomial for $T$ over $F$ is the least common multiple of $p_{1}(x)$, $\mathrm{p}_{2}(\mathrm{x}), \ldots, \mathrm{p}_{\mathrm{k}}(\mathrm{x})$.
Proof. It's proof is trivial.
2.3.5 Theorem. If $p(x)=p_{1}(x)^{t_{1}} p_{2}(x)^{t_{2}} \ldots p_{k}(x)^{t_{k}} ; p_{i}(x)$ are irreducible factors of $\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{x})$ over F , is the minimal polynomial of T , then for $1 \leq \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{k}$, the set $V_{i}=\left\{\mathrm{V} \in \mathrm{V} \mid \mathrm{vp}_{\mathrm{i}}(\mathrm{T})^{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{i}}}=0\right\}$ is non empty subspace of V invariant under T .

Proof. We will show that $V_{i}$ is a subspace of $V$. Let $v_{1}$ and $v_{2}$ are two elements of $V_{i}$. Then by definition, $v_{1} p_{i}(T)^{t_{i}}=0$ and $v_{2} p_{i}(T)^{t_{i}}=0$. Now using linearity property of $T$ we get $\left(v_{1}-v_{2}\right) p_{i}(T)^{t_{i}}=v_{1} p_{i}(T)^{t_{i}}-v_{2} p_{i}(T)^{t_{i}}=0$. Hence $v_{1}-v_{2} \in V_{i}$. Since minimal polynomial of $T$ over $F$ is $p(x)$, therefore, $h_{i}(T)=p_{1}(T)^{t_{1}} \ldots p_{i-1}(T)^{t_{i-1}} p_{i+1}(T)^{t_{i+1}} \ldots p_{k}(T)^{t_{k}} \neq 0$. Hence there exist $u$ in $V$ such that $u h_{i}(T) \neq 0$. But $u h_{i}(T) p_{i}(T)^{t_{i}}=0$, therefore, $u h_{i}(T) \in V i$. Hence $V_{i} \neq 0$. More over for $\mathrm{v} \in \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}, \mathrm{vT}\left(\mathrm{p}_{\mathrm{i}}(\mathrm{T})^{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{i}}}\right)=\mathrm{vp}_{\mathrm{i}}(\mathrm{T})^{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{i}}}(\mathrm{T})=0 \mathrm{~T}=0$. Hence $\mathrm{vTV}_{\mathrm{i}}$ for all $v \in V_{i}$. Hence $V_{i}$ is invariant under T. It proves the lemma.
2.3.6 Theorem. If $p(x)=p_{1}(x)^{t_{1}} p_{2}(x)^{t_{2}} \ldots p_{k}(x)^{t_{k}} ; p_{i}(x)$ are irreducible factors of $\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{x})$ over F , is the minimal polynomial of T , then for $1 \leq \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{k}$, $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}=\left\{\mathrm{v} \in \mathrm{V} \mid \mathrm{vp}_{\mathrm{i}}(\mathrm{T})^{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{i}}}=0\right\} \neq(0), \quad \mathrm{V}=\mathrm{V}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{k}}$. and the minimal polynomial for $T_{i}$ is $p_{i}(x)^{t_{i}}$.

Proof. If $\mathrm{k}=1$ i.e. number of irreducible factors in $\mathrm{p}(\mathrm{x})$ is one then $\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{V} 1$ and the minimal polynomial of $T$ is $p_{1}(x)^{t_{1}}$ i.e. the result holds trivially. Therefore, suppose $\mathrm{k}>1$. By Theorem 2.3.5, each $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is non zero subspace of V invariant under T. Define

$$
\begin{aligned}
& h_{1}(x)=p_{2}(x)^{t_{2}} p_{3}(x)^{t_{3}} \ldots p_{k}(x)^{t_{k}} \\
& h_{2}(x)=p_{1}(x)^{t_{1}} p_{3}(x)^{t_{3}} \ldots p_{k}(x)^{t_{k}} \\
& \ldots \quad \ldots . \quad \ldots \quad \ldots \quad \ldots
\end{aligned} \ldots
$$

$$
\mathrm{h}_{\mathrm{i}}(\mathrm{x})=\prod_{\substack{\mathrm{j}=1 \\ \mathrm{j} \neq \mathrm{ij}}}^{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{p}_{\mathrm{j}}(\mathrm{x})^{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{j}}}
$$

The polynomials $h_{1}(x), h_{2}(x), \ldots, h_{k}(x)$ are relatively prime. Hence we can find polynomials $\mathrm{a}_{1}(\mathrm{x}), \mathrm{a}_{2}(\mathrm{x}), \ldots, \mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{k}}(\mathrm{x})$ in $\mathrm{F}[\mathrm{x}]$ such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& a_{1}(x) h_{1}(x)+a_{2}(x) h_{2}(x)+\ldots+a_{k}(x) h_{k}(x)=1 \text {. Equivalently, we get } \\
& a_{1}(T) h_{1}(T)+a_{2}(T) h_{2}(T)+\ldots+a_{k}(T) h_{k}(T)=I \text { (identity transformation). }
\end{aligned}
$$

Now for $\mathrm{v} \in \mathrm{V}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{v}=\mathrm{vI}= & \mathrm{v}\left(\mathrm{a}_{1}(\mathrm{~T}) \mathrm{h}_{1}(\mathrm{~T})+\mathrm{a}_{2}(\mathrm{~T}) \mathrm{h}_{2}(\mathrm{~T})+\ldots+\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{k}}(\mathrm{~T}) \mathrm{h}_{\mathrm{k}}(\mathrm{~T})\right) \\
& =v a_{1}(\mathrm{~T}) \mathrm{h}_{1}(\mathrm{~T})+\mathrm{va}_{2}(\mathrm{~T}) \mathrm{h}_{2}(\mathrm{~T})+\ldots+\mathrm{va}_{\mathrm{k}}(\mathrm{~T}) \mathrm{h}_{\mathrm{k}}(\mathrm{~T}) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $\operatorname{va}_{i}(T) h_{i}(T) p_{i}(T)^{t_{i}}=0$, therefore, $\operatorname{va}_{i}(T) h_{i}(T) \in V_{i}$. Let $\operatorname{va}_{i}(T) h_{i}(T)=$ $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}}$. Then $\mathrm{v}=\mathrm{v}_{1}+\mathrm{v}_{2}+\ldots+\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{k}}$. Thus $\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{V}_{1}+\mathrm{V}_{2}+\ldots+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{k}}$. Now we will show that if $u_{1}+u_{2}+\ldots+u_{k}=0, u_{i} \in V_{i}$ then each $u_{i}=0$.

As $u_{1}+u_{2}+\ldots+u_{k}=0 \Rightarrow u_{1} h_{1}(T)+u_{2} h_{1}(T)+\ldots+u_{k} h_{1}(T)=0 h_{1}(T)=0$. Since $h_{1}(T)=p_{2}(T)^{t_{2}} p_{3}(T)^{t_{3}} \ldots p_{k}(T)^{t_{k}}$, therefore, $u_{j} h_{1}(T)=0$ for all $j=2,3, \ldots, k$. But then $u_{1} h_{1}(T)+u_{2} h_{1}(T)+\ldots+u_{k} h_{1}(T)=0 \Rightarrow u_{1} h_{1}(T)=0$. Further $u_{1} p_{1}(T)^{t_{1}}=0$. Since $\operatorname{gcd}\left(\mathrm{h}_{1}(\mathrm{x}), \mathrm{p}_{1}(\mathrm{x})\right)=1$, therefore, we can find polynomials $\mathrm{r}(\mathrm{x})$ and $\mathrm{g}(\mathrm{x})$ such that $\quad h_{1}(x) r(x)+p_{1}(x)^{t_{1}} g(x)=1 . \quad$ Equivalently, $h_{1}(T) r(T)+p_{1}(T)^{t_{1}} g(T)=I . \quad$ Hence $\quad u_{1}=u_{1} I=u_{1}\left(h_{1}(T) r(T)+p_{1}(T)^{t_{1}} g(T)\right)$ $=u_{1} h_{1}(T) r(T)+u_{1} p_{1}(T)^{t_{1}} g(T)=0$. Similarly we can show that if $\mathrm{u}_{1}+\mathrm{u}_{2}+\ldots+\mathrm{u}_{\mathrm{k}}=0$ then each $\mathrm{u}_{\mathrm{i}}=0$. It proves that $\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{V}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{k}}$.

Now we will prove that $p_{i}(x)^{t_{i}}$ is the minimal polynomial of $T_{i}$ on $V_{i}$. Since $V_{i} p_{i}(T)^{t_{i}}=(0)$, therefore, $p_{i}(T)^{t_{i}}=0$ on $V_{i}$. Hence the minimal polynomial of $T_{i}$ divides $p_{i}(x)^{t_{i}}$. But then the minimal polynomial of $T_{i}$ is $p_{i}(x)^{r_{i}} ; r_{i} \leq t_{i}$ for each $\mathrm{i}=1,2, \ldots, k$. By Corollary 2.3.4, the minimal polynomial of T on V is least common multiple of $\mathrm{p}_{1}(\mathrm{x})^{\mathrm{r}_{1}}, \mathrm{p}_{2}(\mathrm{x})^{\mathrm{r}_{2}}, \ldots, \mathrm{p}_{\mathrm{k}}(\mathrm{x})^{\mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{k}}}$ which is $p_{1}(x)^{r_{1}} p_{2}(x)^{r_{2}} \ldots p_{k}(x)^{r_{k}}$. But the minimal polynomial is in fact $p_{1}(x)^{t_{1}} p_{2}(x)^{t_{2}} \ldots p_{k}(x)^{t_{k}}$, therefore, $t_{i} \leq r_{i}$ for each $i=1,2, \ldots, k$. Hence we get that the minimal polynomial of $T_{i}$ on $V_{i}$ is $p_{i}(x)^{t_{i}}$. It proves the result.
2.3.7 Corollary. If all the distinct characteristic roots $\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \ldots, \lambda_{k}$ of T lies in F , then V can be written as $\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{V}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{2} \quad \oplus \ldots \quad \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{k}} \quad$ where $V_{i}=\left\{\mathrm{v} \in \mathrm{V} \mid \mathrm{v}\left(\mathrm{T}-\lambda_{\mathrm{i}}\right)^{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{i}}}=0\right\}$ and where $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{i}}$ has only one characteristic root $\lambda_{\mathrm{I}}$ on $V_{i}$.

Proof. As we know that if all the distinct characteristic roots of T lies in F, then every characteristic root of T is a root of its minimal polynomial and vice versa. Since the distinct characteristic roots $\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \ldots, \lambda_{k}$ of T lies in F. Let the multiplicity of these roots are $\mathrm{t}_{1}, \mathrm{t}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{k}}$. Then the minimal polynomial of $T$ over $F$ is $\left(x-\lambda_{1}\right)^{t_{1}}\left(x-\lambda_{2}\right)^{t_{2}} \ldots\left(x-\lambda_{k}\right)^{t_{k}}$. If we define $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}=\left\{\mathrm{v} \in \mathrm{V} \mid \mathrm{v}\left(\mathrm{T}-\lambda_{\mathrm{i}}\right)^{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{i}}}=0\right\}$, then by Theorem 3.6, the corollary follows.
2.3.8 Definition. The matrix $\left[\begin{array}{ccccc}\lambda & 1 & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda & 1 & \ldots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \lambda & \ldots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & \lambda\end{array}\right]_{t \times t}$ of order $t$ is called Jordan block of order t belonging to $\lambda$. For example, $\left[\begin{array}{ll}\lambda & 1 \\ 0 & \lambda\end{array}\right]$ is the Jordan block of order 2 belonging to $\lambda$.
2.3.9 Theorem. If all the distinct characteristic roots $\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \ldots, \lambda_{k}$ of $T \in A(V)$ lies in F , then a basis of V can be found in which the matrix of T is of the form $\left[\begin{array}{cccc}\mathrm{J}_{1} & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{~J}_{2} & 0 & 0 \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \mathrm{~J}_{\mathrm{k}}\end{array}\right]$ where each $\mathrm{J}_{\mathrm{i}}=\left[\begin{array}{cccc}\mathrm{B}_{\mathrm{i} 1} & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{~B}_{\mathrm{i} 2} & 0 & 0 \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \mathrm{~B}_{\mathrm{ir}_{\mathrm{i}}}\end{array}\right]$ and where $\mathrm{B}_{\mathrm{i} 1}, \mathrm{~B}_{\mathrm{i} 2}, \ldots$, $\mathrm{B}_{\mathrm{ir}_{\mathrm{i}}}$ are basic Jordan block belonging to $\lambda$.

Proof. Since all the characteristic roots of T lies in F, the minimal polynomial of $T$ over $F$ will be of the form $\left(x-\lambda_{1}\right)^{t_{1}}\left(x-\lambda_{2}\right)^{t_{2}} \ldots\left(x-\lambda_{k}\right)^{t_{k}}$. If we define $V_{i}=\left\{\mathrm{v} \in \mathrm{V} \mid \mathrm{v}\left(\mathrm{T}-\lambda_{\mathrm{i}}\right)^{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{i}}}=0\right\}$, then for each $\mathrm{i}, \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}} \neq(0)$ is a subspace of V which is invariant under $T$ and $V=V_{1} \oplus V_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus V_{k}$ such that $\left(x-\lambda_{i}\right)^{t_{i}}$ will be the
minimal polynomial of $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{i}}$. As we know that if V is direct sum of its subspaces invariant under T , then we can find a basis of V in which the matrix of T is of the form $\left[\begin{array}{cccc}J_{1} & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & J_{2} & 0 & 0 \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & J_{k}\end{array}\right]$, where each $J_{i}$ is the $n_{i} \times n_{i}$ matrix of $T_{i}$ (the transformation induced by $T$ on $V_{i}$ ) under the basis of $V_{i}$. Since the minimal polynomial of $T_{i}$ on $V_{i}$ is $\left(x-\lambda_{i}\right)^{t_{i}}$, therefore, $\left(T-\lambda_{i} I\right)$ is nilpotent transformation on $V_{i}$ with index of nilpotence $t_{i}$. But then we can obtain a basis $X_{i}$ of $V_{i}$ in which the matrix of $\left(T-\lambda_{i} I\right)$ is of the form.

$$
\left[\begin{array}{cccc}
\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{i} 1} & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{i} 2} & 0 & 0 \\
\ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\
0 & 0 & 0 & \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{ir}_{\mathrm{i}}}
\end{array}\right]_{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{i}} \times \mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{i}}}
$$

where $\mathrm{i} 1 \geq \mathrm{i} 2 \geq \ldots \geq \mathrm{ir} ; \mathrm{i} 1+\mathrm{i} 2+\ldots$
$+\mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{i}}=\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{i}}=\operatorname{dim} \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}$. Since $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{i}}=\lambda_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{I}+\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{i}}-\lambda_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{I}$, therefore, the matrix of $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{i}}$ in the basis $\mathrm{X}_{\mathrm{i}}$ of $V_{i}$ is $J_{i}=$ matrix of $\lambda_{i} I$ under the basis $X_{i}+$ matrix of $T_{i}-\lambda_{i} I$ under the basis
$\mathrm{X}_{\mathrm{i}} . \quad$ Hence $\quad \mathrm{J}_{\mathrm{i}}=\left[\begin{array}{cccc}\lambda & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda & 0 & 0 \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \lambda\end{array}\right]_{n_{i} \times n_{i}}+\left[\begin{array}{cccc}\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{i} 1} & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{i} 2} & 0 & 0 \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{ir}_{\mathrm{i}}}\end{array}\right]_{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{i}} \times n_{i}}$
$=\left[\begin{array}{cccc}\mathrm{B}_{\mathrm{i} 1} & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{~B}_{\mathrm{i} 2} & 0 & 0 \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \mathrm{~B}_{\mathrm{ir}_{\mathrm{i}}}\end{array}\right], \mathrm{B}_{\mathrm{ij}}$ are basic Jordan blocks. It proves the result.

### 2.4 CANONICAL FORM(RATIONAL FORM)

2.4.1 Definition. An abelian group M is called module over a ring R or R -module if $r m \in M$ for all $r \in R$ and $m \in M$ and
(i) $(\mathrm{r}+\mathrm{s}) \mathrm{m}=\mathrm{rm}+\mathrm{rs}$
(ii) $\mathrm{r}\left(\mathrm{m}_{1}+\mathrm{m}_{2}\right)=\mathrm{rm}_{1}+\mathrm{rm}_{2}$
(iii) $(\mathrm{rs}) \mathrm{m}=\mathrm{r}(\mathrm{sm})$ for all $\mathrm{r}, \mathrm{s} \in \mathrm{R}$ and $\mathrm{m}, \mathrm{m}_{1}, \mathrm{~m}_{2} \in \mathrm{M}$.
2.4.2 Definition. Let $V$ be a vector space over the field $F$ and $T \in A(V)$. For $f(x) \in$ $F[x]$, define, $f(x) v=v f(T), f(x) \in F[x]$ and $v \in V$. Under this multiplication $V$ becomes an $\mathrm{F}[\mathrm{x}]$-module.
2.4.3 Definition. An $R$-module $M$ is called cyclic module if $M=\left\{\mathrm{rm}_{0} \mid r \in R\right.$ and some $\mathrm{m}_{0} \in \mathrm{M}$.
2.4.4 Result. If $M$ is finitely generated module over a principal ideal domain $R$. Then M can be written as direct sum of finite number of cyclic R-modules. i.e. there exist $\mathrm{x}_{1}, \mathrm{x}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{n}}$ in M such that

$$
\mathrm{M}=\mathrm{Rx}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{Rx}_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{R} \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{n}} .
$$

2.4.5 Definition. Let $f(x)=a_{0}+a_{1} x+\ldots+a_{m-1} x^{m-1}+x^{m}$ be a polynomial over the field $F$. Then the companion matrix of $f(x)$ is $\left[\begin{array}{cccc}0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \ddots & 0 \\ \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & 1 \\ -\mathrm{a}_{0} & -\mathrm{a}_{1} & \ldots & -\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{m}-1}\end{array}\right]_{\mathrm{m} \times \mathrm{m}}$. It is a square matrix $\left[b_{i j}\right]$ of order $m$ such that $b_{i, i+1}=1$ for $1 \leq i \leq m-1, b_{m, j}=a_{j-1}$ for $1 \leq \mathrm{j} \leq \mathrm{m}$ and for the rest of entries $\mathrm{b}_{\mathrm{ij}}=0$. The above matrix is called companion matrix of $f(x)$. It is denoted by $C(f(x))$. For example companion matrix of $1+2 x-5 x^{2}+4 x^{3}+x^{4}$ is $\left[\begin{array}{cccc}0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ -1 & -2 & 5 & -4\end{array}\right]_{4 \times 4}$
2.4.6 Note. Every $\mathrm{F}[\mathrm{x}]$-module M becomes a vector space over F.Under the multiplication $f(x) v=v f(T), T \in A(V)$ and $v \in V, V$ becomes a vector space over F.
2.4.7 Theorem. Let $V$ be a vector space over $F$ and $T \in A(V)$. If $f(x)=a_{0}+a_{1} x+$ $\ldots+a_{m-1} x^{m-1}+x^{m}$ is minimal polynomial of $T$ over $F$ and $V$ is cyclic $F[x]-$ module, then there exist a basis of V under which the matrix of T is companion matrix of $f(x)$.

Proof. Clearly V becomes F[x]-module under the multiplication defined by $f(x) v=v f(T)$ for all $v \in V, T \in A(V)$. As $V$ is cyclic $F[x]$-module, therefore, there exist $\mathrm{v}_{0} \in \mathrm{~V}$ such that $\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{F}[\mathrm{x}] \mathrm{v}_{0}=\left\{\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{x}) \mathrm{v}_{0} \mid \mathrm{f}(\mathrm{x}) \in \mathrm{F}[\mathrm{x}]\right\}=\left\{\mathrm{v}_{0} \mathrm{f}(\mathrm{T}) \mid\right.$ $f(x) \in F[x]\}$. Now we will show that if $\operatorname{vos}(T)=0$, then $s(T)$ is zero transformation on V. Since $v=f(x) v_{0}$, then $v s(T)=\left(f(x) v_{0}\right) s(T)=\left(v_{0} f(T)\right) s(T)$ $=\left(v_{0} s(T)\right) f(T)=0 f(T)=0$. i.e. every element of $v$ is taken to 0 by $s(T)$. Hence $s(T)$ is zero transformation on $V$. In other words $T$ also satisfies $s(T)$. But then $f(x)$ divides $s(x)$. Hence we have shown that for a polynomial $s(x) \in F[x]$, if $\operatorname{vos}_{0}(\mathrm{~T})=0$, then $\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{x}) \mid \mathrm{s}(\mathrm{x})$.

Now consider the set $A=\left\{v_{0}, v_{0} T, \ldots, v_{0} T^{m-1}\right\}$ of elements of $V$. We will show that it is required basis of V. Take $r_{0} V_{0}+r_{1}\left(v_{0} T\right)+\ldots+r_{m-1}$ $\left(v_{0} T^{m-1}\right)=0, r_{i} \in F$. Further suppose that at least one of $r_{i}$ is non zero. Then $r_{0} v_{0}$ $+\mathrm{r}_{1}\left(\mathrm{v}_{0} \mathrm{~T}\right)+\ldots+\quad \mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{m}-1}\left(\mathrm{v}_{0} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{m}-1}\right)=0 \Rightarrow \mathrm{v}_{0}\left(\mathrm{r}_{0}+\mathrm{r}_{1} \mathrm{~T}+\ldots+\mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{m}-1} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{m}-1}\right)=0$. Then by above discussion $f(x) \mid\left(r_{0}+r_{1} T+\ldots+r_{m-1} T^{m-1}\right)$, a contradiction. Hence if $\mathrm{r}_{0} \mathrm{v}_{0}+\mathrm{r}_{1}\left(\mathrm{v}_{0} \mathrm{~T}\right)+\ldots+\mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{m}-1} \quad\left(\mathrm{v}_{0} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{m}-1}\right)=0$ then each $\mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{i}}=0$. ie the set $A$ is linearly independent over $F$.

Take $v \in V$. Then $v=t(x) v_{0}$ for some $t(x) \in F[x]$. As we can write $\mathrm{t}(\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{x}) \mathrm{q}(\mathrm{x})+\mathrm{r}(\mathrm{x}), \mathrm{r}(\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{r}_{0}+\mathrm{r}_{1} \mathrm{x}+\ldots+\mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{m}-1} \mathrm{x}^{\mathrm{m}-1}$, therefore, $\mathrm{t}(\mathrm{T})=$ $f(T) q(T)+r(T)$ where $r(T)=r_{0}+r_{1} T+\ldots+r_{m-1} T^{m-1}$. Hence $v=t(x) v_{0}=$ $\mathrm{v}_{0} \mathrm{t}(\mathrm{T})=\mathrm{v}_{0}(\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{T}) \mathrm{q}(\mathrm{T})+\mathrm{r}(\mathrm{T}))=\mathrm{v}_{0} \mathrm{f}(\mathrm{T}) \mathrm{q}(\mathrm{T})+\mathrm{v}_{0} \mathrm{r}(\mathrm{T})=\mathrm{v}_{0} \mathrm{r}(\mathrm{T})=\mathrm{v}_{0}\left(\mathrm{r}_{0}+\mathrm{r}_{1} \mathrm{~T}+\ldots\right.$ $\left.+r_{m-1} T^{m-1}\right)=r_{0} v_{0}+r_{1}\left(v_{0} T\right)+\ldots+\quad r_{m-1}\left(v_{0} T^{m-1}\right)$. Hence every element of V is linear combination of element of the set A over F . Therefore, A is a basis of V over F.

$$
\text { Let } \mathrm{v}_{1}=\mathrm{v}_{0}, \mathrm{v}_{2}=\mathrm{v}_{0} \mathrm{~T}, \mathrm{v}_{3}=\mathrm{v}_{0} \mathrm{~T}^{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{m}-1}=\mathrm{v}_{0} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{m}-2}, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{m}}=\mathrm{v}_{0} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{m}-1} .
$$

Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{v}_{1} \mathrm{~T}=\mathrm{v}_{2}=0 . \mathrm{v}_{1}+1 . \mathrm{v}_{2}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{3}+\ldots+0 . \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{m}-1}+0 \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{m}} \text {, } \\
& \mathrm{v}_{2} \mathrm{~T}=\mathrm{v}_{3}=0 . \mathrm{v}_{1}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{2}+1 . \mathrm{v}_{3}+\ldots+0 . \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{m}-1}+0 \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{m}} \text {, } \\
& \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{m}-1} \mathrm{~T}=\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{m}}=0 . \mathrm{v}_{1}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{2}+0 . \mathrm{v}_{3}+\ldots+0 . \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{m}-1}+1 \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{m}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $f(T)=0 \Rightarrow v_{0} f(T)=0 \Rightarrow v_{0}\left(a_{0}+a_{1} T+\ldots+a_{m-1} T^{m-1}+T^{m}\right)=0$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \Rightarrow a_{0} v_{0}+a_{1} v_{0} T+\ldots+a_{m-1} v_{0} T^{m-1}+v_{0} T^{m}=0 \\
& \Rightarrow v_{0} T^{m}=-a_{0} v_{0}-a_{1} v_{0} T-\ldots-a_{m-1} v_{0} T^{m-1}
\end{aligned}
$$

As

$$
\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{m}} \mathrm{~T}=\mathrm{v}_{0} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{m}-1} \mathrm{~T}=\mathrm{v}_{0} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{m}}=-\mathrm{a}_{0} \mathrm{v}_{0}-\mathrm{a}_{1} \mathrm{v}_{0} \mathrm{~T}-\ldots-\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{m}-1} \mathrm{v}_{0} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{m}-1}
$$

$$
=-a_{0} v_{1}-a_{1} v_{2}-\ldots-a_{m-1} v_{m}
$$

Hence the matrix under the basis $\mathrm{v}_{1}=\mathrm{v}_{0}, \mathrm{v}_{2}=\mathrm{v}_{0} \mathrm{~T}, \mathrm{v}_{3}=\mathrm{v}_{0} \mathrm{~T}^{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{m}-1}=\mathrm{v}_{0} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{m}-2}$, $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{m}}=\mathrm{v}_{0} \mathrm{~T}^{\mathrm{m}-1}$ is $\left[\begin{array}{cccc}0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \ddots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ -\mathrm{a}_{0} & -\mathrm{a}_{1} & \cdots & -\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{m}-1}\end{array}\right]_{\mathrm{m} \times \mathrm{m}}=\mathrm{C}(\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{x}))$. It proves the result.
2.4.8 Theorem. Let $V$ be a finite dimensional vector space over $F$ and $T \in A(V)$. Suppose $q(x)^{t}$ is the minimal polynomial for $T$ over $F$, where $q(x)$ is irreducible monic polynomial over F . Then there exist a basis of V such that the matrix of T under this basis is of the form

$$
\left[\begin{array}{cccc}
\mathrm{C}\left(\mathrm{q}(\mathrm{x})^{\mathrm{t}_{1}}\right) & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\
0 & \mathrm{C}\left(\mathrm{q}(\mathrm{x})^{\mathrm{t}_{2}}\right) & \cdots & 0 \\
0 & 0 & \cdots & \vdots \\
0 & 0 & \cdots & \mathrm{C}\left(\mathrm{q}(\mathrm{x})^{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{k}}}\right)
\end{array}\right] \text { where } \mathrm{t}=\mathrm{t}_{1} \geq \mathrm{t}_{2} \geq \ldots \geq \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{k}}
$$

Proof. Since we know that if $M$ is a finitely generated module over a principal ideal domain $R$, then $M$ can be written as direct sum of finite number of cyclic R-submodules. We know that V is a vector space over $\mathrm{F}[\mathrm{x}]$ with the scalar multiplication defined by $f(x) v=v f(T)$. As $V$ is a finite dimensional vector space over F , therefore, it is finitely dimensional vector space over $\mathrm{F}[\mathrm{x}]$ also. Thus, it is finitely generated module over $\mathrm{F}[\mathrm{x}]$ (because each vector space is a module also). But then we can obtain cyclic submodules of V say $\mathrm{F}[\mathrm{x}] \mathrm{v}_{1}$, $\mathrm{F}[\mathrm{x}] \mathrm{v}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{~F}[\mathrm{x}] \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{k}}$ such that $\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{F}[\mathrm{x}] \mathrm{v}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{~F}[\mathrm{x}] \mathrm{v}_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{~F}[\mathrm{x}] \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{k}}, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}} \in \mathrm{V}$.

Since $\left(F(x) v_{i}\right) T=\left(v_{i} F[T]\right) T==v_{i}(F[T] T)==\left(v_{i} g(T)\right)=$ $g(x) v_{i} \in F[x] v_{i}$. Hence each $F[x] v_{i}$ is invariant under $T$. But then we can find a basis of V in which the matrix of T is $\left[\begin{array}{cccc}\mathrm{A}_{1} & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{~A}_{2} & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \mathrm{~A}_{\mathrm{k}}\end{array}\right]$ where $\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is the matrix of $T$ under the basis of $V_{i}$. Now we claim that $A_{i}=C\left(q(x)^{t_{i}}\right)$. Let $p_{i}(x)$ be the minimal polynomial of $T_{i}\left(\right.$ i.e of $T$ on $V_{i}$ ). Since $w_{i} q(T)^{t}=0$ for all $w_{i} \in F[x] v_{i}$, therefore, $p_{i}(x)$ divides $q(x)^{t}$. Thus $p_{i}=q(x)^{t_{i}} .1 \leq t_{i} \leq t . \operatorname{Re}$ indexing $V_{i}$, we can find $t_{1} \geq t_{2} \geq \ldots \geq t_{k}$. Since $V=F[x] v_{1} \oplus F[x] v_{2} \oplus \ldots$
$\oplus \mathrm{F}[\mathrm{x}] \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{k}}$, therefore, the minimal polynomial of T on V is $\operatorname{lcm}\left(q(x)^{t_{1}}, q(x)^{t_{2}}, \ldots, q(x)^{t_{k}}\right)=q(x)^{t_{1}}$. Then $q(x)^{t_{1}}=q(x)^{t_{1}}$. Hence $t=t_{1}$. By Theorem 2.4.7, the matrix of T on $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is companion matrix of monic minimal polynomial of $T$ on $V_{i}$. Hence $A_{i}=C\left(q(x)^{t_{i}}\right)$. It proves the result.
2.4.9 Theorem. Let $V$ be a finite dimensional vector space over $F$ and $T \in A(V)$. Suppose $q_{1}(x)^{t_{1}} q_{2}(x)^{t_{2}} \ldots q_{k}(x)^{t_{k}}$ is the minimal polynomial for $T$ over $F$, where $\mathrm{q}_{\mathrm{i}}(\mathrm{x})$ are irreducible monic polynomial over F . Then there exist a basis of V such that the matrix of T under this basis is of the form

$$
\left[\begin{array}{cccc}
\mathrm{A}_{1} & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\
0 & \mathrm{~A}_{2} & \cdots & 0 \\
0 & 0 & \cdots & \vdots \\
0 & 0 & \cdots & A_{k}
\end{array}\right]_{\mathrm{n} \times n} \quad \text { where } \quad \mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{i}}=\left[\begin{array}{ccccc}
\mathrm{C}\left(\mathrm{q}_{\mathrm{i}}(\mathrm{x})^{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{i} 1}}\right) & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\
0 & \mathrm{C}\left(\mathrm{q}_{\mathrm{i}}(\mathrm{x})^{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{i} 2}}\right) & \cdots & 0 \\
0 & 0 & \cdots & \vdots \\
0 & 0 & \cdots & \mathrm{C}\left(\mathrm{q}_{\mathrm{i}}(\mathrm{x})^{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{i}}}}\right)
\end{array}\right]
$$

where $t_{i}=t_{i 1} \geq t_{i 2} \geq \ldots \geq t_{i r_{i}}$ for each $i, 1 \leq i \leq k, \sum_{j=1}^{r_{i}} t_{i j}=n_{i}$ and $\sum_{i=1}^{r} n_{i}=n$.
Proof. Let $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}=\left\{\mathrm{v} \in \mathrm{V} \mid \mathrm{vq}_{\mathrm{i}}(\mathrm{T})^{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{i}}}=0\right\}$. Then each $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is non zero invariant (under T) subspace of V and $\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{V}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{k}}$. Also the minimal polynomial of $T$ on $V_{i}$ is $q_{i}(x)^{t_{i}}$. For such a $V$, we can find a basis of $V$ under which the matrix of $T$ is of the form $\left[\begin{array}{cccc}A_{1} & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & A_{2} & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & A_{k}\end{array}\right]_{n \times n}$. In this matrix, each $A_{i}$ is a square matrix and is the matrix of $T$ in $V_{i}$. As $T$ has $q_{i}(x)^{t_{i}}$ as its minimal polynomial, therefore, by Theorem, 2.4.8, $\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{i}}=$ $\left[\begin{array}{cccc}\mathrm{C}\left(\mathrm{q}_{i}(x)^{\mathrm{t}_{i 1}}\right) & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{C}\left(\mathrm{q}_{\mathrm{i}}(\mathrm{x})^{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{i} 2}}\right) & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \mathrm{C}\left(\mathrm{q}_{\mathrm{i}}(x)^{\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{t}_{i j}}}\right)\end{array}\right]$. Rest part of the result is easy to prove.
2.4.10 Definition. The polynomials $q_{1}(x)^{t_{11}}, \ldots, q_{1}(x)^{t_{l_{1}}}, \ldots ., q_{k}(x)^{t_{k 1}}, \ldots, q_{k}(x)^{t_{k_{k}}}$ are called elementary divisors of T.
2.4.11 Theorem. Prove that elementary divisors of T are unique.

Proof. Let $q(x)=q_{1}(x)^{l_{1}} q_{2}(x)^{l_{2}} \ldots q_{k}(x)^{l_{k}}$ be the minimal polynomial of T where each $\mathrm{q}_{\mathrm{i}}(\mathrm{x})$ is irreducible and $l_{\mathrm{i}} \geq 1$. Let $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}=\left\{\mathrm{v} \in \mathrm{V} \mid v q_{i}(T)^{l_{i}}=0\right\}$. Then $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is a non zero invariant subspace of $\mathrm{V}, \mathrm{V}=\mathrm{V}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{k}}$ and the minimal polynomial of $T$ on $V_{i}$ i.e. of $T_{i}$, is $q_{i}(x)^{1_{i}}$. More over we can find a basis of $V$ such that the matrix of $T$ is $\left[\begin{array}{ll}R_{1} & \\ & R_{k}\end{array}\right]$, where $R_{i}$ is the matrix of $T$ on $V_{i}$.

Since $V$ becomes an $F[x]$ module under the operation $f(x) v=v f(T)$, therefore, each $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is also an $\mathrm{F}[\mathrm{x}]$-module. Hence there exist $\mathrm{v}_{1}, \mathrm{v}_{2}, \ldots, v_{r_{i}} \in \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{i}}$ such that $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}=\mathrm{F}[\mathrm{x}] \mathrm{v}_{1}+\ldots+\mathrm{F}[\mathrm{x}] v_{r_{i}}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i} 1}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i} 2}+\ldots+V_{i r_{i}}$ where each $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ij}}$ is a subspace of $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}$ and hence of V . More over $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ij}}$ is cyclic $\mathrm{F}[\mathrm{x}]$ module also. Let $q(x)^{l_{i j}}$ be the minimal polynomials of T on $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ij}}$. Then $q(x)^{l_{i j}}$ becomes elementary divisors of $\mathrm{T}, 1 \leq \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{k}$ and $1 \leq \mathrm{j} \leq \mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{i}}$. Thus to prove that elementary divisors of T are unique, it is sufficient to prove that for all $\mathrm{i}, 1 \leq \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{k}$, the polynomials $q_{i}(x)^{l_{i 1}}, q_{i}(x)^{l_{i 2}}, \ldots, q_{i}(x)^{l_{i_{i}}}$ are unique. Equivalently, we have to prove the result for $\mathrm{T} \in \mathrm{A}(\mathrm{V})$, with $\mathrm{q}(\mathrm{x})^{l}, \mathrm{q}(\mathrm{x})$ is irreducible as the minimal polynomial have unique elementary divisor.

Suppose $\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{V}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{r}}$ and $\mathrm{V}=\mathrm{W}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{~W}_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{~W}_{\mathrm{s}}$ where each $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}$ and $\mathrm{W}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is a cyclic $\mathrm{F}[\mathrm{x}]$-module. The minimal polynomial of T on $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is have unique elementary divisors $q(x)^{l_{i}}$ where $l=l_{1} \geq l_{2} \geq \ldots \geq l_{\mathrm{r}}$ and $l=l^{*_{1}} \geq l^{*} *_{2}$ $\geq \ldots \geq l^{*}$. Also $\sum_{i=1}^{r} l_{i} d=\mathrm{n}=\operatorname{dim} \mathrm{V}$ and $\sum_{i=1}^{s} l_{i}^{*} d=\operatorname{dim} \mathrm{V}, \mathrm{d}$ is the degree of $\mathrm{q}(\mathrm{x})$. We will sow that $l_{\mathrm{i}}=l_{\mathrm{i}}$ and $\mathrm{r}=\mathrm{s}$. Suppose t is first integer such that $l_{1}=l^{*}, l_{2}=l^{*}, \ldots, l_{\mathrm{t}-1}=l_{\mathrm{t}-1}$ and $l_{\mathrm{t}} \neq l^{*}$. Since each $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}$ and $\mathrm{W}_{\mathrm{i}}$ are invariant under T , therefore, $V q(T)^{l^{*}}=V_{1} q(T)^{l^{*} t} \oplus \ldots \oplus V_{r} q(T)^{)^{*} t}$. But then the dimension $V q(T)^{l^{*} t}=\sum_{j=1}^{r} \operatorname{dim} V_{j} q(T)^{l^{*} t} \geq \sum_{j=1}^{i} \operatorname{dim} V_{j} q(T)^{l^{*} t}$. Since $l_{\mathrm{t}} \neq l^{*}$, without loss of generality, suppose that $l_{\mathrm{t}}>l^{*}$. As $V_{j} q(T)^{l^{*}} t=\mathrm{d}\left(l_{\mathrm{j}}-l^{*}{ }_{\mathrm{t}}\right)$,
therefore, $\quad \operatorname{dim} \quad V q(T)^{l^{*}} \geq \sum_{j=1}^{i-1} d\left(l_{j}-l_{t}^{*}\right)$. Similarly dimension of $V q(T)^{l^{*}}{ }_{i}=\sum_{j=1}^{i-1} d\left(l^{*}{ }_{j}-l^{*}{ }_{t}\right)<\sum_{j=1}^{i} d\left(l_{j}-l^{*}{ }_{t}\right) \leq V q(T)^{l^{*}{ }_{i}}$, a contradiction. Thus $l_{\mathrm{t}} \leq l^{*}$. Similarly, we can show that $l_{\mathrm{t}} \geq l_{\mathrm{t}}$. Hence $l_{\mathrm{t}}=l_{\mathrm{t}}$. It holds for all t . But then $\mathrm{r}=\mathrm{s}$.

### 2.5 KEY WORDS

Nilpotent Transformations, similar transformations, characteristic roots, canonical forms.

### 2.6 SUMMARY

For $\mathrm{T} \in \mathrm{A}(\mathrm{V})$, V is finite dimensional vector space over F , we study nilpotent transformation, Jordan forms and rational canonical forms.

### 2.7 SELF ASSESMENT QUESTIONS

(1) Show that all the characteristic root of a nilpotent transformations are zero
(2) If S and T are nilpotent transformations, then show that $\mathrm{S}+\mathrm{T}$ and ST are also nilpotent.
(3) Show that S and T are similar if and only they have same elementary divisors.

### 2.8 SUGGESTED READINGS:

(1) Modern Algebra; SURJEET SINGH and QAZI ZAMEERUDDIN, Vikas Publications.
(2) Basic Abstract Algebra; P.B. BHATTARAYA, S.K.JAIN, S.R. NAGPAUL, Cambridge University Press, Second Edition.

## MAL-521: M. Sc. Mathematics (Advance Abstract Algebra)

Lesson No. 3
Lesson: Modules I

## STRUCTURE

### 3.0 OBJECTIVE

3.1 INTRODUCTION
3.2 MODULES (CYCLIC MODULES)
3.3 SIMPLE MODULES
3.4 SIMI-SIMPLE MODULES
3.5 FREE MODULES
3.6 NOETHERIAN AND ARTINIAN MODULES
3.7 NOETHERIAN AND ARTINIAN RINGS
3.8 KEY WORDS
3.9 SUMMARY
3.10 SELF ASSESMENT QUESTIONS
3.11 SUGGESTED READINGS

### 3.0 OBJECTIVE

Objective of this chapter is to study another algebraic system (modules over an arbitrary ring R ) which is generalization of vector spaces over field F .

### 3.1 INTRODUCTION

A vector space is an algebraic system with two binary operations over a field F which satisfies certain conditions. If we take an arbitrary ring, then vector space V becomes an R -module or a module over ring R .

In first section of this chapter we study definitions and examples of modules. In section 3.3, we study about simple modules (i.e. modules having no proper submodule). In next section, semi-simple modules are studied. Free modules are studied in section 3.5. We also study ascending and descending chain conditions for submodules of given module. There are certain modules which satisfies ascending chain conditions (called as noetherian module) and descending chain conditions (called as artinian modules). Such type of
modules are studied in section 3,6. At last we study noetherian and artinian rings.

### 3.2 MODULES(CYCLIC MODULES)

3.2.1 Definition. Let R be a ring. An additive abelian group M together with a scalar multiplication $\mu: \mathrm{R} \times \mathrm{M} \rightarrow \mathrm{M}$, is called a left R module if for all $\mathrm{r}, \mathrm{s} \in \mathrm{R}$ and $\mathrm{x}, \mathrm{y} \in \mathrm{M}$
(i) $\mu(\mathrm{r},(\mathrm{x}+\mathrm{y}))=\mu(\mathrm{r}, \mathrm{x})+\mu(\mathrm{r}, \mathrm{y})$
(ii) $\mu((r+s), x)=\mu(r, x)+\mu(s, x)$
(iii) $\mu(\mathrm{r}, \mathrm{sx}))=\mu(\mathrm{rs}, \mathrm{x})$

If we denote $\mu(\mathrm{r}, \mathrm{x})=\mathrm{rx}$, then above conditions are equivalent to
(i) $r(x+y))=r x+r y$
(ii) $(r+s) x=r x+s x$
(iii) $r(s x)=(r s) x$.

If $R$ has an identity element 1 and
(iv) $1 \mathrm{x}=\mathrm{x}$ for all $\mathrm{x} \in \mathrm{M}$. Then M is called Unitary (left) R-module

Note. If R is a division ring, then a unital (left) R-module is called as left vector space over $R$.

Example (i) Let Z be the ring of integer and G be any abelian group with nx defined by
$\mathrm{nx}=\mathrm{x}+\mathrm{x}+\ldots+\mathrm{x}(\mathrm{n}$ times) for positive n and
$\mathrm{nx}=-\mathrm{x}-\mathrm{x}-\ldots-\mathrm{x}(\mathrm{n}$ times) for negative n and zero other wise.

Then $G$ is an Z-module.
(ii) Every extension K of a field F is also an F -module.
(iii) $R[x]$, the ring of polynomials over the ring $R$, is an $R$-module
3.2.2 Definition. Submodule. Let M be an R-module. Then a subset N of M is called R-submodule of M if N itself becomes a module under the same scalar multiplication defined on R and M. Equivalently, we say that if
(i) $x-y \in N$
(ii) $\mathrm{rx} \in \mathrm{N}$ for all $\mathrm{x}, \mathrm{y} \in \mathrm{N}$ and $\mathrm{r} \in \mathrm{R}$.

Example (i) $\{0\}$ and M are sub modules of R-module M . These are called trivial submodules.
(ii) Since 2 Z (set of all even integers) is an Z-module. Then $4 \mathrm{Z}, 8 \mathrm{Z}$ are its Z submodules.
(iii) Each left ideal of a ring R is an R -submodule of left R -module and vice versa.
3.2.3 Theorem. If $M$ is an left $R$-module and $x \in M$, then the set $R x=\{r x \mid x \in R\}$ is an R-submodule of M .

Proof. As $R x=\{r x \mid x \in R\}$, therefore, for $r_{1}$ and $r_{2}$ belonging to $R, r_{1} x$ and $r_{2} x$ belongs to Rx. Since $r_{1}-r_{2} \in R$, therefore, $r_{1} X-r_{2} x=\left(r_{1}-r_{2}\right) x \in R x$. More over for $r$ and $s \in R, s(r x)=(s r) x \in R x$. Hence $R x$ is an $R$-submodule of $M$.
3.2.4 Theorem. If M is an R -module and $\mathrm{K}=\{\mathrm{rx}+\mathrm{nx} \mid \mathrm{r} \in \mathrm{R}, \mathrm{n} \in \mathrm{Z}\}$ is an R submodule of $M$ containing $x$. Further if $M$ is unital $R$-module then $K=R x$. Proof. Since for $r_{1}, r_{2} \in R$ and $n_{1}, n_{2} \in Z$ we have $r_{1}-r_{2} \in R$ and $n_{1}-n_{2} \in Z$, therefore, $\mathrm{r}_{1} \mathrm{x}+\mathrm{n}_{1} \mathrm{x}-\left(\mathrm{r}_{2} \mathrm{x}+\mathrm{n}_{2} \mathrm{x}\right)=\mathrm{r}_{1} \mathrm{x}-\mathrm{r}_{2} \mathrm{x}+\mathrm{n}_{1} \mathrm{x}-\mathrm{n}_{2} \mathrm{x}=\left(\mathrm{r}_{1}-\mathrm{r}_{2}\right) \mathrm{x}+\left(\mathrm{n}_{1}-\mathrm{n}_{2}\right) \mathrm{x} \in \mathrm{K}$. More over for $\mathrm{s} \in \mathrm{R}, \mathrm{s}(\mathrm{rx}+\mathrm{nx})=\mathrm{s}(\mathrm{rx}+\mathrm{x}+\ldots+\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{s}(\mathrm{rx})+\mathrm{sx}+\ldots+\mathrm{sx}=(\mathrm{sr}) \mathrm{x}$ $+\mathrm{sx}+\ldots+\mathrm{sx}=((\mathrm{sr})+\mathrm{s}+\ldots+\mathrm{s}) \mathrm{x}$. Since $((\mathrm{sr})+\mathrm{s}+\ldots+\mathrm{s}) \in \mathrm{R}$, therefore, $((\mathrm{sr})$ $+s+\ldots+s) x+0 . x \in K$. Hence $K$ is an $R$-submodule. As $x=0 x+1 x \in K$, therefore, K is an R -submodule containing x . Let S be another R -submodule containing $x$, then $r x$ and $n x \in S$. Hence $K \subseteq S$. Therefore, $K$ is the smallest $R-$ submodule containing x .

If M is unital R -module, then $1 \in \mathrm{R}$ such that $1 . \mathrm{m}=\mathrm{m} \forall \mathrm{m} \in \mathrm{M}$. Hence for $x \in M, x=1 . x \in R x$. As by Theorem 3.2.3, $R x$ is an $R$-submodule. But $K$ is the smallest $R$-submodule of $M$ containing $x$. Hence $K \subseteq R x$. Now For $r x \in R x$, $r x=r x+0 x \in K$. Hence $K=R x$. It proves the theorem.
3.2.5 Definition. Let $S$ be a subset of an R-module $M$. The submodule generated by S , denoted by $<\mathrm{S}>$ is the smallest submodule of M containing S .
3.2.6 Theorem. Let $S$ be a subset of an R-module $M$. Then $\langle S\rangle=\{0\}$ if $S=\phi$, and is $C(S)=\left\{r_{1} x_{1}+r_{2} x_{2}+\ldots+r_{n} x_{n} \mid r_{1} \in R\right\}$ if $S=\left\{x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\}$.

Proof. Since $<\mathrm{S}>$ is the smallest submodule containing S , therefore, for the case when $S=\phi,<S>=\{0\}$. Suppose that $S=\left\{x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\}$. Let $x$ and $y \in C(S)$. Then $\mathrm{x}=\mathrm{r}_{1} \mathrm{x}_{1}+\mathrm{r}_{2} \mathrm{x}_{2}+\ldots+\mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{n}}, \mathrm{y}=\mathrm{t}_{1} \mathrm{x}_{1}+\mathrm{t}_{2} \mathrm{x}_{2}+\ldots+\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{n}}, \mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{i}}$ and $\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{i}} \in R$ and $\mathrm{x}-\mathrm{y}$ $=\left(r_{1}-t_{1}\right) x_{1}+\left(r_{2}-t_{2}\right) x_{2}+\ldots+\left(r_{n}-t_{n}\right) x_{n} \in C(S)$. Similarly $r x \in C(S)$ for all $r \in R$ and $x \in C(S)$. Therefore, $C(S)$ is a submodule of $M$. Further if $N$ is another submodule containing $S$ then $x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n} \in N$ and hence $r_{1} x_{1}+r_{2} x_{2}+\ldots+r_{n}$ $\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{n}} \in \mathrm{N}$ i.e. $\mathrm{C}(\mathrm{S}) \subseteq \mathrm{N}$. It shows that $\mathrm{C}(\mathrm{S})=<\mathrm{S}>$ is the smallest such submodule.
3.2.7 Definition. Cyclic module. An R-module M is called cyclic module if it is generated by single element of M . The cyclic module generated by x is and is $\{r x+n x \mid r \in R, n \in Z\}$. Further if $M$ is an unital $R$-module, then $<x>=\{r x \mid$ $\mathrm{r} \in \mathrm{R}\}$.

Example.(i) Every finite additive abelian group is cyclic Z-module.
(ii) Every field F as an F-module is cyclic module.

### 3.3 SIMPLE MODULES

3.3.1 Definition. A module M is said to be simple R -module if $\mathrm{RM} \neq\{0\}$ and the only submodules of it are $\{0\}$ and M .
3.3.2 Theorem. Let $M$ be an unital R-module. Then $M$ is said to be simple if and only if $\mathrm{M}=\mathrm{Rx}$ for every non zero $\mathrm{x} \in \mathrm{M}$. In other words M is simple if and only if it is generated by every non zero element $\mathrm{x} \in \mathrm{M}$.

Proof. First suppose that $M$ is simple. Consider $R x=\{r x \mid r \in R\}$. By Theorem 3.2.3, it is an R -submodule of M . As M is unital R-module, therefore, there exist $1 \in R$ such that $1 . m=m$ for all $m \in M$. Hence $x(\neq 0)=1 . x \in R x$, therefore $R x$ is non zero unital $R$-module. Since $M$ is simple, therefore, $M=R x$. It proves the result.

Conversely, suppose that $\mathrm{M}=\mathrm{Rx}$ for every non zero x in M . Let A be any non zero submodule of M . Then $\mathrm{A} \subseteq \mathrm{M}$. Let y be a non zero element in $A$. Then $y \in M$. Hence by our assumption, $M=R y$. By Theorem 3.2.3, Ry is
the smallest submodule containing y , therefore, $\mathrm{Ry} \subseteq \mathrm{A}$. hence $\mathrm{M} \subseteq \mathrm{A}$. Now $\mathrm{A} \subseteq \mathrm{M}, \mathrm{M} \subseteq \mathrm{A}$ implies that $\mathrm{M}=\mathrm{A}$ i.e. M has no non zero submodule. Hence M is simple.
3.3.3 Corollary. If $R$ is a unitary ring. Then $R$ is a simple $R$-module if and only if $R$ is a division ring.

Proof. First suppose that R is simple R -module. We will show that R is a division ring. Let x be a non zero element in R . As R is a unitary simple ring, therefore, by Theroem 3.2.8, $\mathrm{R}=\mathrm{Rx}$. As $1 \in \mathrm{R}$ and $\mathrm{R}=\mathrm{Rx}$, therefore, $1 \in \mathrm{Rx}$. Hence there exist a non-zero $y$ in $R$ such that $1=y x$. i.e. inverse of non zero element exist in $R$. Hence $R$ is a division ring.

Conversely suppose that R is a division ring. Since ideals of a ring are R -submodules of that ring and vice versa, therefore ideals of R will be submodules of $M$. But $R$ has two ideal $\{0\}$ and $R$ itself. Hence $R$ has only trivial submodules. Therefore, R is simple R -module.
3.3.4 Definition. A f be a mapping from an R -module M to an R -module N is called homomorphism if
(i) $f(x+y)=f(x)+f(y)$
(ii) $f(r x)=r f(x)$ for all $x, y \in M$ and $r \in R$.

It is easy to see that $f(0)=0, f(-x)=-f(x)$ (iii) $f(x-y)=f(x)-f(y)$.
3.3.5 Theorem (Fundamental Theorem on Homomorphism). If $f$ is an homomorphism from R-modules $M$ into $N$, then $\frac{M}{\operatorname{ker} f} \cong f(M)$.
3.3.6 Problem. Let R be a ring with unity and M be an R -module. Show that M is cyclic if and only if $M \cong \frac{R}{I}$, where $I$ is left ideal of $R$.

Solution. First let M be cyclic i.e. $\mathrm{M}=\mathrm{Rx}$ for some $\mathrm{x} \in \mathrm{M}$. Define a mapping $\phi: R \rightarrow M$ by $\phi(r)=r x, r \in R$. Since $\phi\left(r_{1}+r_{2}\right)=\left(r_{1}+r_{2}\right) x=r_{1} x+r_{2} x=\phi\left(r_{1}\right)+\phi\left(r_{2}\right)$ and $\phi(\mathrm{sr})=(\mathrm{sr}) \mathrm{x}=\mathrm{s}(\mathrm{rx})=\mathrm{s} \phi(\mathrm{r})$ for all $\mathrm{r}_{1}, \mathrm{r}_{2}, \mathrm{~s}$ and r belonging to R , therefore, $\phi$ is an homomorphism from R to M . As $\mathrm{M}=\mathrm{Rx}$, therefore, for $\mathrm{rx} \in \mathrm{M}$, there exist $r \in R$ such that $\phi(r)=r x$ i.e. the mapping is onto also. Hence by Fundamental
theorem on homorphism, $\frac{\mathrm{R}}{\operatorname{Ker} \phi} \cong \mathrm{M}$. But Ker $\phi$ is an left ideal of R , therefore, taking $\operatorname{Ker} \phi=I$ we get $M \cong \frac{R}{I}$.

Conversely suppose that $M \cong \frac{R}{I}$. Let $f: \frac{R}{I} \rightarrow M$ be an isomorphism such that $\mathrm{f}(1+\mathrm{I})=\mathrm{x}$. Then for $\mathrm{r} \in \mathrm{R}, \mathrm{f}(\mathrm{r}+\mathrm{I})=\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{r}(1+\mathrm{I}))=\mathrm{r} \mathrm{f}(1+\mathrm{I})=\mathrm{rx}$. i.e. we have shown that $\operatorname{img} f=\{r x \mid r \in R\}=R x$. Since image of $f$ is $M$, therefore, $R x=M$ for some $\mathrm{x} \in \mathrm{M}$. Thus M is cyclic. It proves the result.
3.3.7 Theorem. Let N be a submodule of M . Prove that the submodules of the quotient module $\frac{M}{N}$ are of the form $\frac{U}{N}$, where $U$ is submodule of $M$ containing N .

Proof. Define a mapping f: $\mathrm{M} \rightarrow \frac{\mathrm{M}}{\mathrm{N}}$ by $\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{m})=\mathrm{m}+\mathrm{N} \forall \mathrm{m} \in \mathrm{M}$. Let $X$ be an submodule of $\frac{M}{N}$. Define $U=\{x \in M \mid f(x) \in X\}=\{x \in M \mid m+N \in X\}$. Let $x$, $y \in U$. Then $f(x), f(y) \in X$. But then $f(x-y)=f(x)-f(y) \in X$ and for $r \in R$, $f(r x)=r f(x) \in X$. Hence by definition of $U, x-y$ and $r x \in U$. i.e. $U$ is an $R-$ submodule. Also $\mathrm{N} \subseteq \mathrm{U}$, because for all $\mathrm{x} \in \mathrm{N}, \mathrm{f}(\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{x}+\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{N}=$ identity of $X$, therefore, $f(x) \in M$. Because $f$ is an onto mapping, therefore, for $x \in X$, there always exists $y \in M$, such that $f(y)=x$. By definition of $U, y \in U$. Hence $X \subseteq$ $f(U)$. Clearly $f(U) \subseteq X$. Thus $X=f(U)$. But $f(U)=\frac{U}{N}$. Hence $X=\frac{U}{N}$. It proves the result.
3.3.8 Theorem. Let M be an unital R-module. Then the following are equivalent
(i) M is simple R -module
(ii) Every non zero element of M generates M
(iii) $\mathrm{M} \cong \frac{R}{I}$, where I is maximal left ideal of $R$.

Proof. (i) $\Rightarrow$ (ii) follows from Theroem 3.2.8.
(ii) $\Rightarrow$ (iii). As every non zero element of $M$ generates $M$, therefore, $M$ is cyclic and by Problem 3.2.12, $M \cong \frac{R}{I}$. Now we have to show that $I$ is maximal. Since $M$ is simple, therefore, $\frac{R}{I}$ is also simple. But then $I$ is maximal ideal of R. It proves (iii)
(iii) $\Rightarrow$ (i). By (iii) $M \cong \frac{R}{I}$, $I$ is maximal left ideal of $R$. Since $I$ is maximal ideal of $R$, therefore, $I \neq R$. Further $1+I \in \frac{R}{I}$ and $R\left(\frac{R}{I}\right) \neq\{I\}$ implies that $R M$ $\neq\{0\}$. Let N be a submodule of M and f is an isomorphism from M to $\frac{\mathrm{R}}{\mathrm{I}}$. Since $f(N)$ is a submodule of $\frac{R}{I}$, therefore, by Theorem 3.3.7, $f(N)=\frac{J}{I}$. But $I$ is maximal ideal of R , therefore, $\mathrm{J}=\mathrm{I}$ or $\mathrm{J}=\mathrm{R}$. If $\mathrm{J}=\mathrm{I}$, then $\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{N})=\{\mathrm{I}\}$ implies that $\mathrm{N}=\{0\}$. If $\mathrm{J}=\mathrm{R}$, then $\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{N})=\frac{\mathrm{R}}{\mathrm{I}}$ implies that $\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{M}$. Hence M has no nontrivial submodule i.e. M is simple.
3.3.9 Theorem. (Schur's lemma). For a simple $R$-module $M, \operatorname{Hom}_{R}(M, M)$ is a division ring.

Proof. Since the set of all homomorphism from M to M form the ring under the operation defines by $(\mathrm{f}+\mathrm{g})(\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{x})+\mathrm{g}(\mathrm{x})$ and $(\mathrm{f} . \mathrm{g})(\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{g}(\mathrm{x}))$ for all f and g belonging to the set of all homomorphism and for all x belonging to M . In order to show that $\operatorname{Hom}_{R}(\mathrm{M}, \mathrm{M})$ is a division ring we have to show that every non zero homomorphism $f$ has an inverse in $\operatorname{Hom}_{R}(M, M)$. i.e. we have to show that f is one-one and onto. As $\mathrm{f}: \mathrm{M} \rightarrow \mathrm{M}$. consider Ker f and img f. Both are submodules of $M$. But $M$ is simple, therefore, $\operatorname{ker} f=\{0\}$ or $M$. If $\operatorname{ker} f=M$, then f becomes a zero homomorphism. But f is non zero homomorphism. Hence $\operatorname{ker} \mathrm{f}=\{0\}$. i.e. f is one-one.

Similarly img $\mathrm{f}=\{0\}$ or M. If img $\mathrm{f}=\{0\}$, then f becomes an zero mapping which is not true. Hence $\operatorname{img} f=M$ i.e. mapping is onto also. Hence $f$ is invertible. Therefore, we have shown that every non zero element of $\operatorname{Hom}_{R}(M, M)$ is invertible. It mean $\operatorname{Hom}_{R}(M, M)$ is division ring.

### 3.4 SEMI-SIMPLE MODULES

3.4.1 Definition. Let M be an R -module and $\left(\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{i}}\right), 1 \leq \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{t}$ be a family of submodules of $M$. The submodule generated by $\bigcup_{i=1}^{t} N_{i}$ is the smallest submodule containing all the submodules $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{i}}$. It is also called the sum of submodules $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{i}}$ and is denoted by $\sum_{i=1}^{t} N_{i}$.
3.4.2 Theorem. Let M be an R -module and $\left(\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{i}}\right), 1 \leq \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{t}$ be a family of submodules of M. Show that $\sum_{i=1}^{t} N_{i}=\left\{x_{1}+x_{2}+\ldots+x_{t} \mid x_{i} \in N_{i}\right\}$.

Proof. Let $S=\left\{x_{1}+x_{2}+\ldots+x_{t} \mid x_{i} \in N_{i}\right\}$. Further let $x$ and $y \in S$. Then $x=x_{1}+x_{2}$ $+\ldots+x_{n}, y=y_{1}+y_{2}+\ldots+y_{n}, x_{i}$ and $y_{i} \in S$. Then $x-y=\left(x_{1}+x_{2}+\ldots+x_{n}\right)-$ $\left(y_{1}+y_{2}+\ldots+y_{n}\right)=\left(x_{1}-y_{1}\right)+\left(x_{2}-y_{2}\right)+\ldots+\left(x_{n}-y_{n}\right) \in$ S . Similarly $r x \in S$ for all $r \in R$ and $x \in S$. Therefore, $S$ is an submodule of $M$.

Further if $N$ is another left submodule containing $S$ then $x_{1}$, $x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n} \in N$ and hence $x_{1}+x_{2}+\ldots+x_{n} \in N$ i.e. $S \subseteq N$. It shows that $S$ is the smallest module containing each $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{i}}$. Therefore, by Definition 3.4.1, $\sum_{\mathrm{i}=1}^{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{i}}=$ $S=\left\{x_{1}+x_{2}+\ldots+x_{t} \mid x_{i} \in N_{i}\right\}$.
3.4.3 Note. If $U N_{i}$ is a family of submodules of $M$, then $\sum_{i \in \Lambda} N_{i}=\left\{\sum_{\text {finite }} x_{i} \mid x_{i} \in N_{i}\right\}$.
3.4.4 Definition. Let $\left(N_{i}\right)_{i \in \Lambda}$ be a family of submodule M. The sum $\sum_{\mathrm{i} \in \Lambda} \mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is called direct sum if each element $x$ of $\sum_{i \in \Lambda} N_{i}$ can be uniquely written as $x=\sum x_{i}$, where $x_{i} \in N_{i}$ and $x_{i}=0$ for almost all $i$ in index set $\Lambda$. In other words, there are finite number of $x_{i}$ that are non zero in $\Sigma x_{i}$. It is denoted by $\oplus \sum_{i \in \Lambda} N_{i}$. Each $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{i}}$ in $\oplus \sum_{\mathrm{i} \in \Lambda} \mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is called a direct summand of the direct sum $\oplus \sum_{\mathrm{i} \in \Lambda} \mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{i}}$.
3.4.5 Theroem. Let $\left(N_{i}\right)_{i \in \Lambda}$ be a family of submodule $M$. Then the following are equivalent.
(i) $\sum_{i \in \Lambda} N_{i}$ is direct
(ii) $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{i}} \cap \sum_{\substack{\mathrm{j} \in \Lambda \\ \mathrm{j} \neq \mathrm{i}}} \mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{j}}=\{0\}$ for all i
(iii) $0=\sum \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}} \in \sum_{\mathrm{i} \in \Lambda} \mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{i}} \Rightarrow \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}}=0$ for all i.

Proof. These results are easy to prove.
3.4.6 Definition. (Semi-simple module). An R-module M is called semi-simple or completely reducible if $\mathrm{M}=\sum_{\mathrm{i} \in \Lambda} \mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{i}}$, where $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{i}}$ 's are simple R-submodules of M . Example. R ${ }^{3}$ is a semi-simple R-module.
3.4.7 Theorem. Let $\mathrm{M}=\sum_{\alpha \in \Lambda} \mathrm{M}_{\alpha}$ be a sum of simple R-submodules $\mathrm{M}_{\alpha}$ and K be a submodule of $M$. Then there exist a subset $\Lambda^{*} \subseteq \Lambda$ such that $\sum_{\alpha \in \Lambda^{*}} \mathrm{M}_{\alpha}$ is a direct sum and $\mathrm{M}=\mathrm{K} \oplus\left(\oplus \sum_{\alpha \in \Lambda^{*}} \mathrm{M}_{\alpha}\right)$.
Proof. Let $S=\left\{\Lambda^{* *} \subseteq \Lambda \mid \sum_{\alpha \in \Lambda^{* *}} \mathrm{M}_{\alpha}\right.$ is a direct sum and $\left.\mathrm{K} \cap \sum_{\alpha \in \Lambda^{* *}} \mathrm{M}_{\alpha}=\{0\}\right\}$. Since $\phi \subseteq \Lambda$ and $\sum_{\alpha \in \phi} \mathrm{M}_{\alpha}=\{0\}$, therefore, $\mathrm{K} \cap \sum_{\alpha \in \phi} \mathrm{M}_{\alpha}=\mathrm{K} \cap\{0\}=\{0\}$. Hence $\phi \in S$. Therefore, $S$ is non empty. Further $S$ is partial order set under the relation that for $\mathrm{A}, \mathrm{B} \in \mathrm{S}, \mathrm{A}$ is in relation with B iff either $\mathrm{A} \subseteq \mathrm{B}$ or $\mathrm{B} \subseteq \mathrm{A}$. More over every chain $\left(A_{i}\right)$ in $S$ has an upper bound $\cup A_{i}$ in $S$. Thus by Zorn's lemma $S$ has maximal element say $\Lambda^{*}$. Let $\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{K} \oplus\left(\oplus \sum_{\alpha \in \Lambda^{*}} \mathrm{M}_{\alpha}\right)$. We will show that $N=M$. Let $\omega \in \Lambda$. Since $M_{\omega}$ is simple, therefore, either $N \cap M_{\omega}=\{0\}$ or $\mathrm{M}_{\omega}$. If $\mathrm{N} \cap \mathrm{M}_{\omega}=\{0\}$, then $\mathrm{M}_{\omega} \cap\left(\oplus \sum_{\alpha \in \Lambda^{*}} \mathrm{M}_{\alpha}\right)=\{0\}$. But then $\sum_{\alpha \in \Lambda^{*} \cup\{\omega\}} \mathrm{M}_{\alpha}$ is a direct sum having non empty intersection with K . But this contradicts the maximality of $\Lambda^{*}$. Thus $N \cap M_{\omega}=M_{\omega}$ i.e. $\mathrm{M}_{\omega} \subseteq \mathrm{N}$, proving that $\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{M}$.
3.4.8 Note. If we take $K=\{0\}$ module in Theorem 3.4.7, then we get the result that " If $\mathrm{M}=\sum_{\alpha \in \Lambda} \mathrm{M}_{\alpha}$ is the sum of simple R -submodules $\mathrm{M}_{\alpha}$, then there exist a subset $\Lambda^{*} \subseteq \Lambda$ such that $\sum_{\alpha \in \Lambda^{*}} M_{\alpha}$ is a direct sum and $M=\oplus \sum_{\alpha \in \Lambda^{*}} M_{\alpha} "$.
3.4.9 Theorem. Let M be an R -module. Then the following conditions are equivalents
(i) M is semi-simple
(ii) M is direct sum of simple modules
(iii) Every submodule of $M$ is direct summand of $M$.

Proof. (i) $\Rightarrow$ (ii). Since $M$ is semi-simple, then by definition, $M=\sum_{\alpha \in \Lambda} M_{\alpha}$, where $N_{i}$ 's are simple submodules. Also by Theorem 3.4.7, if $\mathrm{M}=\sum_{\alpha \in \Lambda} \mathrm{M}_{\alpha}$ is a sum of simple R-submodules $\mathrm{M}_{\alpha}$ 's and K be a submodule of M , then there exist a subset $\Lambda^{*} \subseteq \Lambda$ such that $\sum_{\alpha \in \Lambda^{*}} \mathrm{M}_{\alpha}$ is a direct sum and $\mathrm{M}=\mathrm{K} \oplus\left(\oplus \sum_{\alpha \in \Lambda^{*}} \mathrm{M}_{\alpha}\right)$. By Note 3.4.8, if we take $\mathrm{K}=\{0\}$, then $\mathrm{M}=\oplus \sum_{\alpha \in \Lambda^{*}} \mathrm{M}_{\alpha}$ i.e. $M$ is direct sum of simple submodules. (ii) $\Rightarrow$ (iii). Let $M=\oplus \sum_{\alpha \in \Lambda} M_{\alpha}$, where each $M_{\alpha}$ is simple. Then $M$ is sum of simple R-submodules. But then by Theorem 3.4.7, for given submodule K of M we can find a subfamily $\Lambda^{*}$ of given family $\Lambda$ of submodules such that $\mathrm{M}=\mathrm{K} \oplus\left(\oplus \sum_{\alpha \in \Lambda^{*}} \mathrm{M}_{\alpha}\right)$. Take $\oplus \sum_{\alpha \in \Lambda^{*}} \mathrm{M}_{\alpha}=\mathrm{M}^{*}$. Then $\mathrm{M}=\mathrm{K} \oplus \mathrm{M}^{*}$. Therefore, K is direct summand of M .
(iii) $\Rightarrow$ (i). First we will show that M has simple submodule. Let $\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{Rx}$ be a submodule of M . Since N is finitely generated module, therefore, N has a maximal element $\mathrm{N}^{*}$ (say) (because every finitely generated module has a maximal element). Consider the quotient module $\frac{\mathrm{N}}{\mathrm{N}^{*}}$. Since $\mathrm{N}^{*}$ is simple, therefore, $\frac{\mathrm{N}}{\mathrm{N}^{*}}$ is simple. Being a submodule of $\mathrm{N}, \mathrm{N}^{*}$ is submodule of M also. Hence $\mathrm{N}^{*}$ is a direct summand of M . Therefore, there exist submodule
$M_{1}$ of $M$ such that $M=N^{*} \oplus M_{1}$. But then $N \subseteq N^{*} \oplus M_{1}$. If $y \in N$, then $y=x+z$ where $x \in N^{*}$ and $z \in M_{1}$. Since $z=y-x \in N$ (because $y \in N$ and $x \in N^{*} \subseteq N$ ), therefore, $\mathrm{y}-\mathrm{x} \in \mathrm{N} \cap \mathrm{M}_{1}$. Equivalently, $\mathrm{y} \in \mathrm{N}^{*}+\mathrm{N} \cap \mathrm{M}_{1}$. Hence $\mathrm{N} \subseteq \mathrm{N}^{*}+\mathrm{N} \cap \mathrm{M}_{1}$. Since $\mathrm{N}^{*}$ and $\mathrm{N} \cap \mathrm{M}_{1}$ both are subset of N , therefore, $\mathrm{N}^{*}+\mathrm{N} \cap \mathrm{M}_{1} \subseteq \mathrm{~N}$. By above discussion we conclude that $N^{*}+N \cap M_{1}=N$. Since $M=N^{*} \oplus M_{1}$, $\left(\mathrm{N}^{*} \cap \mathrm{M}_{1}\right)=\{0\}$, therefore, $\mathrm{N} * \cap\left(\mathrm{~N} \cap \mathrm{M}_{1}\right)=\left(\mathrm{N}^{*} \cap \mathrm{M}_{1}\right) \cap \mathrm{N}=\{0\}$. Hence $\mathrm{N}=$ $\mathrm{N}^{*} \oplus\left(\mathrm{~N} \cap \mathrm{M}_{1}\right)$.

$$
\text { Now } \frac{\mathrm{N}}{\mathrm{~N}^{*}}=\frac{\mathrm{N}^{*}+\mathrm{N} \cap \mathrm{M}_{1}}{\mathrm{~N}^{*}} \cong \frac{\mathrm{~N} \cap \mathrm{M}_{1}}{\mathrm{~N}^{*} \cap\left(\mathrm{~N} \cap \mathrm{M}_{1}\right)}=\frac{\mathrm{N} \cap \mathrm{M}_{1}}{\{0\}} \approx \mathrm{N} \cap \mathrm{M}_{1} \text {. }
$$

Since $\frac{\mathrm{N}}{\mathrm{N}^{*}}$ is simple submodule, therefore, $\left(\mathrm{N} \cap \mathrm{M}_{1}\right)$ is also simple submodule of N and hence of M also. By above discussion we conclude that M always has a simple submodule. Take $f=\left\{\mathrm{M}_{\omega}\right\}_{\omega \in \Lambda}$ as the family of all simple submodules of M . Then by above discussion $f \neq \phi$. Let $\mathrm{X}=\sum_{\omega \in \Lambda} \mathrm{M}_{\omega}$. Then X is a submodule of M . By (iii), X is direct summand of M , therefore, there exist $M^{*}$ such that $M=X \oplus M^{*}$. We will show that $M^{*}=\{0\}$. If $M^{*}$ is non zero, then $\mathrm{M}^{*}$ has simple submodule say Y . Then $\mathrm{Y} \in f$. Hence $\mathrm{Y} \subseteq \mathrm{X}$. But then $Y=X \cap M^{*}$, a contradiction to the result $\mathrm{M}=\mathrm{X} \oplus \mathrm{M}^{*}$. Hence $\mathrm{M}^{*}=\{0\}$ and $\mathrm{M}=$ $X=\sum_{\omega \in \Lambda} M_{\omega}$ i.e. $M$ is semi-simple and (i) follows.
3.4.10 Theorem. Prove that submodule and factor modules of a semi-simple module are again a semi-simple.

Proof. Let M be semi-simple R-module and N be a submodule of M . As M is semi-simple, therefore, every submodule of $M$ is direct summand of $M$. Hence for given submodule $X$, there exist $M^{*}$ such that $M=X \oplus M^{*}$. But then $\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{M} \cap \mathrm{N}=\mathrm{X} \oplus \mathrm{M}^{*} \cap \mathrm{~N}=(\mathrm{X} \cap \mathrm{N}) \oplus\left(\mathrm{M}^{*} \cap \mathrm{~N}\right)$. Hence $\mathrm{X} \cap \mathrm{N}$ is direct summand of N . Therefore N is semi-simple.

Now we will show that $\frac{M}{N}$ is also semi-simple. Since $M$ is semisimple and N is a submodule of M , therefore, N is direct summand of of M i.e.
$\mathrm{M}=\quad \mathrm{N} \oplus \mathrm{M}^{*}$ Since $\mathrm{N} \cap \mathrm{M}^{*}=\{0\}, \quad$ therefore,
$\frac{M}{N}=\frac{N \oplus M^{*}}{N} \cong \frac{M^{*}}{N \cap M^{*}}=\frac{M^{*}}{\{0\}}=M^{*}$. Being a submodule of semi-simple module $M, M^{*}$ is semi-simple and hence $\frac{M}{N}$ is semi-simple. It proves the result.

### 3.5 FREE MODULES

3.5.1 Definition. Let $M$ be an $R$ module. A subset $S$ of $M$ is said to be linearly dependent over $R$ if and only if there exist distinct elements $x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n}$ in $S$ and elements $r_{1}, r_{2}, \ldots, r_{n}$ in $R$, not all zero such that $r_{1} x_{1}+r_{2} x_{2}+\ldots+r_{n} x_{n}=0$.
3.5.2 Definition. If the elements $x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n}$ of $M$ are not linearly dependent over $R$, then we say that $x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n}$ are linearly independent over R. A subset $S=$ $\left\{x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{t}\right\}$ of $M$ is called linearly independent over ring $R$ if elements $x_{1}$, $x_{2}, \ldots, x_{t}$ are linearly independent over $R$.
3.5.3 Definition. Let $M$ be an R-module. A subset $S$ of $M$ is called basis of $M$ over R if
(i) S is linearly independent over R ,
(ii) $<S>=$ M. i.e. $S$ generates $M$ over $R$.
3.5.4 Definition. An R-module $M$ is said to be free module if and only it has a basis over R

Example(i) Every vector space V over a field F is a free F-module.
(ii) Every unitary R-module, R is a free R -module.
(iii) Every Infinite abelian group is a free Z-module.

Example of an R-module $M$ which is not free module. Show that $Q$ (the field of rational numbers ) is not a free Z -module.(Here Z is the ring of integers).

Solution. Take two non-zero rational numbers $\frac{p}{q}$ and $\frac{r}{s}$. Then there exist two
integers qr and -ps such that $\operatorname{qr} \frac{\mathrm{p}}{\mathrm{q}}+\left(-\mathrm{ps} \frac{\mathrm{r}}{\mathrm{s}}\right)=0$. i.e. every subset S of Q having two elements is Linearly dependent over Z. Hence every super set of S i.e. every subset of Q having at least two elements is linearly dependent over $Z$. Therefore, basis of Q over Z has at most one element. We will show the set containing single element can not be a basis of $Q$ over $Z$. Let $\frac{p}{q}$ be the basis element. Then by definition of basis, $\mathrm{Q}=\left\{\mathrm{n} \frac{\mathrm{p}}{\mathrm{q}}, \mathrm{n} \in \mathrm{Z}\right\}$. But $\frac{\mathrm{p}}{2 \mathrm{q}}$ belongs to Q such that $\frac{\mathrm{p}}{2 \mathrm{q}}=\frac{1}{2} \frac{\mathrm{p}}{\mathrm{q}} \neq \mathrm{n} \frac{\mathrm{p}}{\mathrm{q}}$. Hence $\mathrm{Q} \neq\left\{\mathrm{n} \frac{\mathrm{p}}{\mathrm{q}}, \mathrm{n} \in \mathrm{Z}\right\}$. In other word Q has no basis over Z . Hence Q is not free module over Z .
3.5.5 Theorem. Prove that every free $R$-module $M$ with basis $\left\{x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{t}\right\}$ is isomorphic to $\mathrm{R}^{(\mathrm{t}}$. (Here $\mathrm{R}^{(\mathrm{t})}$ is the R -module of t -tuples over R ).
Proof. Since $\left\{x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{t}\right\}$ is the basis of $M$ over $R$, therefore, $M=\left\{r_{1} x_{1}+r_{2} x_{2}\right.$ $\left.+\ldots+r_{t} x_{t} \mid r_{1}, r_{2}, \ldots, r_{t} \in R\right\}$. As $R^{(t)}=\left\{\left(r_{1}, r_{2}, \ldots, r_{t}\right) \mid r_{1}, r_{2}, \ldots, r_{t} \in R\right\}$. Define a mapping $\mathrm{f}: \mathrm{M} \rightarrow \mathrm{R}^{(\mathrm{t})}$ by setting $\mathrm{f}\left(\mathrm{r}_{1} \mathrm{X}_{1}+\mathrm{r}_{2} \mathrm{x}_{2}+\ldots+\mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{t}}\right)=\left(\mathrm{r}_{1}, \mathrm{r}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{t}}\right)$. We will show that f is an isomorphism.

Let $x$ and $y \in M$, then $x=r_{1} x_{1}+r_{2} x_{2}+\ldots+r_{t} x_{t}$ and $y=s_{1} x_{1}+s_{2} x_{2}+\ldots+$ $s_{t} x_{t}$ where for each $i, s_{i}$ and $r_{i} \in R$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{x}+\mathrm{y}) & =\mathrm{f}\left(\left(\mathrm{r}_{1}+\mathrm{s}_{1}\right) \mathrm{x}_{1}+\left(\mathrm{r}_{2}+\mathrm{s}_{2}\right) \mathrm{x}_{2}+\ldots+\left(\mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{t}}+\mathrm{s}_{\mathrm{t}}\right) \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{t}}\right) \\
& =\left(\left(\mathrm{r}_{1}+\mathrm{s}_{1}\right),\left(\mathrm{r}_{2}+\mathrm{s}_{2}\right), \ldots,\left(\mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{t}}+\mathrm{s}_{\mathrm{t}}\right)\right)=\left(\mathrm{r}_{1}, \mathrm{r}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{t}}\right)+\left(\mathrm{s}_{1}, \mathrm{~s}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{~s}_{\mathrm{t}}\right) \\
& =\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{x})+\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{y})
\end{aligned}
$$

and $f(r x)=f\left(r\left(r_{1} x_{1}+r_{2} x_{2}+\ldots+r_{t} x_{t}\right)=f\left(r_{1} x_{1}+r_{2} x_{2}+\ldots+r_{t} x_{t}\right)=\left(\operatorname{rr}_{1}, \mathrm{rr}_{2}, \ldots r_{t}\right)\right.$
$=r\left(r_{1}, r_{2}, \ldots r_{t}\right)=r f(x)$. Therefore, $f$ is an R-homomorphism.
This mapping $f$ is onto also as for $\left(r_{1}, r_{2}, \ldots r_{t}\right) \in R^{(t)}$, there exist $x=r_{1} x_{1}+r_{2} x_{2}$ $+\ldots+r_{t} x_{t} \in M$ such that $f(x)=\left(r_{1}, r_{2}, \ldots r_{t}\right)$. Further $f(x)=f(y) \Rightarrow\left(r_{1}, r_{2}, \ldots r_{t}\right)$ $=\left(s_{1}, s_{2}, \ldots, s_{t}\right) \Rightarrow r_{i}=s_{i}$ for each i. Hence $x=y$ i.e. the mapping $f$ is one-one also and hence the mapping $f$ is an isomorphism from $M$ to $R^{(t)}$.

### 3.6 NOETHERIAN AND ARTINIAN MODULES

3.6.1 Definition. Let $M$ be a left R-module and $\left\{\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{i}}\right\}_{i \geq 1}$ be a family of submodules of $M$. The family $\left\{M_{i}\right\}_{i \geq 1}$ is called ascending chain if $M_{1} \subseteq M_{2} \subseteq \ldots \subseteq M_{n} \subseteq \ldots$ Similarly if $M_{1} \supseteq M_{2} \supseteq \ldots \supseteq M_{n} \supseteq \ldots$, then family $\left\{M_{i}\right\}_{i \geq 1}$ is called descending chain.
3.6.2 Definition. An R-module M is called Noetherian if for every ascending chain of submodules of $M$, there exist an integer $k$ such that $M_{k}=M_{k+t}$ for all $t \geq 0$. In other words $\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{k}}=\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{k}+1}=\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{k}+2}=\ldots$. Equivalently, an R-module M is called Noetherian if every ascending chain becomes stationary or terminates after a finite number of terms.

If the left R-module M is Noetherian, then M is called left Noetherian and if right R-module M is Noetherian, then M is called right Noetherian.

Example. Show that Z as Z -module is Noetherian.
Solution. Since we know that Z is principal ideal ring and in a ring every ideal is submodule of Z -module Z . Consider the submodule generated by $<\mathrm{n}>, \mathrm{n} \in \mathrm{Z}$. Further $<\mathrm{n}>\subseteq<\mathrm{m}>$ iff $\mathrm{m} \mid \mathrm{n}$. As the number of divisors of n are finite, therefore, the number of distinct member in the ascending chain of family of submodules are finite. Hence Z is noetherian Z -module.
3.6.3 Theorem. Prove that for an left R-module $M$, following conditions are equivalent:
(i) M is Noetherian (ii) Every non empty family of R -module has a maximal element (iii) Every submodule of $M$ is finitely generated.

Proof. (i) $\Rightarrow$ (ii). Let $f$ be a non empty family of submodules of M . If possible $f$ does not have a maximal element, then for $\mathrm{M}_{1} \in f$, there exist $\mathrm{M}_{2}$ such that $M_{1} \subseteq M_{2}$. By our assumption, there exist $M_{3}$, such that $M_{1} \subseteq M_{2} \subseteq M_{3}$. Continuing in this way we get an non terminating ascending chain $\mathrm{M}_{1}$ $\subseteq \mathrm{M}_{2} \subseteq \mathrm{M}_{3} \ldots$, of submodules of M , a contradiction to the fact that M is Noetherian. Hence $f$ always have a maximal element.
(ii) $\Rightarrow$ (iii). Consider a submodule N of M . Let $\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}} \in \mathrm{N}$ for $\mathrm{i}=1,2,3, \ldots$ Consider the family $f$ of submodules $\left.\left.\left.\mathrm{M}_{1}=<\mathrm{x}_{1}\right\rangle, \mathrm{M}_{2}=<\mathrm{x}_{1}, \mathrm{x}_{2}\right\rangle, \mathrm{M}_{3}=<\mathrm{x}_{1}, \mathrm{x}_{2}, \mathrm{x}_{3}\right\rangle, \ldots$,
of N or equivalently of M . By (ii), $f$ has maximal element $\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{k}}$ (say). Definitely $M_{k}$ is finitely generated. In order to show that $N$ is finitely generated, it is sufficient to show that $M_{k}=N$. Trivially $M_{k} \subseteq N$. Let $x_{i} \in N$. Then $x_{i} \in M_{i} \subseteq M_{k}$ for all i. Hence $N \subseteq M_{k}$ i.e. $M_{k}=N$. It proves (iii).
(ii) $\Rightarrow$ (iii). Let $f$ be an ascending chain of submodules of M. and ascending chain is $\mathrm{M}_{1} \subseteq \mathrm{M}_{2} \subseteq \mathrm{M}_{3} \ldots$. Consider $\mathrm{N}=\underset{\mathrm{i} \geq 1}{ } \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{i}}$. Then N is a submodule of M . By (iii), N is finitely generated i.e. $\mathrm{N}=<\mathrm{x}_{1}, \mathrm{x}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{k}}>$. Let $\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{t}}$ be the submodule in the ascending chain $\mathrm{M}_{1} \subseteq \mathrm{M}_{2} \subseteq \mathrm{M}_{3} \ldots$. such that each $\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is contained in $M_{t}$. Then $N \subseteq M_{r}$ for all $r \geq t$. But $M_{r} \subseteq N$. Then $N=M_{r}$. Hence $M_{t}=M_{t+1}=M_{t+2}=\ldots$ and hence $M$ is Noetherian. It proves (i).
3.6.4 Definition. Let M be an left R -module and $\zeta=\left\{\mathrm{M}_{\lambda}\right\}_{\lambda \in \Lambda}$ be a non empty family of submodules of M . M is called finitely co-generated if for every non empty family $\zeta$ having $\{0\}$ intersection has a finite subfamily with $\{0\}$ intersection.
3.6.5 Definition. Left R -module M is called Left Artinian module if every descending chain $M_{1} \supseteq M_{2} \supseteq M_{3} \ldots$ of submodules of $M$ becomes stationary after a finite number of steps. i.e there exist k such that $\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{k}}=\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{k}+\mathrm{t}}$ for all $\mathrm{t} \geq 0$.
3.6.6 Theorem. Prove that for an left R-module M , following conditions are equivalent:
(i) M is Artinian
(ii) Every non empty family of R-module has a minimal element (iii) Every quotient module of M is finitely co-generated.

Proof. (i) $\Rightarrow$ (ii). Let $f$ be a non empty family of submodules of M. If possible $f$ does not have a minimal element, then for $\mathrm{M}_{1} \in f$, there exist $\mathrm{M}_{2}$ such that $M_{1} \supseteq M_{2}$. By our assumption, there exist $M_{3}$, such that $M_{1} \supseteq M_{2} \supseteq M_{3}$. Continuing in this way we get an non terminating discending chain $\mathrm{M}_{1}$ $\supseteq \mathrm{M}_{2} \supseteq \mathrm{M}_{3} \ldots$, of submodules of M , a contradiction to the fact that M is Artinian. Hence $f$ always have a minimal element.
(ii) $\Rightarrow$ (iii). For a submodule N , consider the quotient module $\frac{\mathrm{M}}{\mathrm{N}}$. Let $\left\{\frac{M_{\lambda}}{N}\right\}_{\lambda \in \Lambda}$ be a family of submodules of $\frac{M}{N}$ such that $\cap_{\lambda \in \Lambda} \frac{M_{\lambda}}{N}=\{N\}$. Since $N=\bigcap_{\lambda \in \Lambda} \frac{M_{\lambda}}{N}=\frac{\cap_{\lambda \in \Lambda} M_{\lambda}}{N}$, therefore $\bigcap_{\lambda \in \Lambda}^{\cap M_{\lambda}}=N$. Let $\zeta=\left\{M_{\lambda}\right\}_{\lambda \in \Lambda}$ and for every finite subset $\Lambda^{*} \subseteq \Lambda$ let $f=\left\{\mathrm{A}=\underset{\lambda \in \Lambda^{*}}{\cap} \mathrm{M}_{\lambda}\right\}$. As $\mathrm{M}_{\lambda} \in f$ for all $\lambda \in \Lambda$, therefore, $\zeta \subseteq f$. i.e. $f \neq \phi$. By given condition f has a minimal element say A. Then $A=M_{\lambda_{1}} \cap M_{\lambda_{2}} \cap \ldots \cap M_{\lambda_{n}}$. Let $\lambda \in \Lambda$. Then $A \cap M_{\lambda} \subseteq A$. But $A$ is minimal element of the collection $f$, therefore, $\mathrm{A} \cap \mathrm{M}_{\lambda} \neq(0)$. Hence $\mathrm{A} \cap \mathrm{M}_{\lambda}$ $=A \forall \lambda \in \Lambda$. But then $A \subseteq \cap_{\lambda \in \Lambda} M_{\lambda}=N$. Since $N$ is contained in each $M_{\lambda}$, therefore, $N \subseteq M_{\lambda_{1}} \cap M_{\lambda_{2}} \cap \ldots \cap M_{\lambda_{n}}=A$. Hence $N=A=\bigcap_{i=1}^{n} M_{\lambda_{i}}$. Now $\bigcap_{i=1}^{n} \frac{M_{\lambda_{i}}}{N}=\frac{\bigcap_{i=1}^{n} M_{\lambda_{i}}}{N}=\frac{N}{N}=N$. Hence there exist a subfamily $\left\{\frac{M_{\lambda_{i}}}{N}\right\}_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ of the family $\left\{\frac{M_{\lambda}}{N}\right\}_{\lambda \in \Lambda}$ such that $\bigcap_{i=1}^{n} \frac{M_{\lambda_{i}}}{N}=N$. It shows that every quotient module is finitely co-generated. It proves (iii).
(iii) $\Rightarrow$ (i). Let $\mathrm{M}_{1} \supseteq \mathrm{M}_{2} \supseteq \ldots \supseteq \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{n}} \supseteq \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{n}+1} \supseteq \ldots$ be a descending chain of submodules of $M$. Let $N=\underset{i \geq 1}{\bigcap M_{i}}$. Then $N$ is a submodule of $M$. Consider the family $\left\{\frac{M_{i}}{N}\right\}_{i \geq 1}$ of submodules of $\frac{M}{N}$. Since $\cap \frac{M_{i}}{N}=\frac{\cap_{i \geq 1}}{N}=\frac{N}{N}=N$ and $\frac{M}{N}$ is finitely co-generated, therefore, there exist a subfamily $\left\{\frac{M_{\lambda_{i}}}{N}\right\}_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ of the family $\left\{\frac{M_{i}}{N}\right\}_{i \geq 1}$ such that $\bigcap_{i=1}^{n} \frac{M_{\lambda_{i}}}{N}=N$. Let $\mathrm{k}=\max =\left\{\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \ldots \lambda_{n}\right\}$. Then $N=\bigcap_{i=1}^{n} \frac{M_{\lambda_{i}}}{N}=\frac{\bigcap_{i=1}^{n} M_{\lambda_{i}}}{N}=\frac{M_{k}}{N} \Rightarrow M_{k}=N$. Now $N=\bigcap_{i \geq 1} M_{i} \subseteq M_{k+i} \subseteq M_{k} \subseteq N \Rightarrow$ $\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{k}+\mathrm{i}} \subseteq \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{k}}$ for all $\mathrm{i} \geq 0$. Hence M is Artinian.
3.6.7 Theorem. Let M be Noetherian left R-module. Show that every submodule and factor module of M are also Noetherian.
Proof. Since $M$ is Noetherian, therefore, it is finitely generated. Being a submodule of finitely module, N is also finitely generated. Hence N is also Noetherian.

Consider factor module $\frac{M}{N}$. Let $\frac{A}{N}$ be its submodule. Then A is submodule of $M$ is Noetherian, therefore, $A$ is finitely generated. Suppose $A$ is generated by $x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n}$. Take arbitrary element $x+N$ of $\frac{A}{N}$. Then $x \in A$. Therefore, $x=r_{1} x_{1}+r_{2} x_{2}+\ldots r_{n} x_{n}, r_{i} \in R$. But then $x+N=\left(r_{1} x_{1}+r_{2} x_{2}+\ldots+\right.$ $\left.r_{n} x_{n}\right)+N=r_{1}\left(x_{1}+N\right)+r_{2}\left(x_{2}+N\right)+\ldots+r_{n}\left(x_{n}+N\right)$ i.e. $x+N$ is linear combination of $\left(x_{1}+N\right),\left(x_{2}+N\right), \ldots,\left(x_{n}+N\right)$ over R. Equivalently, we have shown that $\frac{A}{N}$ is finitely generated. Hence $\frac{A}{N}$ is Noetherian. It proves the result.
3.6.8 Theorem. Let M be an left R -module. If N is a submodule of M such that N and $\frac{M}{N}$ both are Noetherian, then $M$ is also Noetherian.

Proof. Let A be a submodule of M . In order to show M is Noetherian we will show that $A$ is finitely generated. Since $A+N$ is a submodule of $M$ conting $N$, therefore, $\frac{A+N}{N}$ is submodule of $\frac{M}{N}$. Being a submodule of Noetherian module $\frac{A+N}{N}$ is finitely generated. As $\frac{A+N}{N} \cong \frac{A}{A \cap N}$, therefore, $\frac{A}{A \cap N}$ is also finitely generated. Let $\frac{A}{A \cap N}=<y_{1}+(A \cap N), y_{2}+(A \cap N), \ldots, y_{k}+$ $(\mathrm{A} \cap \mathrm{N})>$. Further $\mathrm{A} \cap \mathrm{N}$ is a submodule of Noetherian module N , therefore, it is also finitely generated. Let $(\mathrm{A} \cap \mathrm{N})=\left\langle\mathrm{x}_{1}, \mathrm{x}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{t}}\right\rangle$. Let $\mathrm{x} \in \mathrm{A}$. Then $x+(A \cap N) \in \frac{A}{A \cap N}$. Hence $x+(A \cap N)=r_{1}\left(y_{1}+(A \cap N)\right)+r_{2}\left(y_{2}+(A \cap N)\right)+\ldots$ $+r_{k}\left(y_{k}+(A \cap N)\right), \quad r_{i} \in R$. Then $x+(A \cap N)=\left(r_{1} y_{1}+r_{2} y_{2}+\ldots+r_{k} y_{k}+\right.$ $(A \cap N))$ or $x-\left(r_{1} y_{1}+r_{2} y_{2}+\ldots+r_{k} y_{k}\right) \in(A \cap N)$. Since $(A \cap N)=<x_{1}, x_{2}$, $\ldots, x_{t}>$, therefore, $\mathrm{x}-\left(\mathrm{r}_{1} \mathrm{y}_{1}+\mathrm{r}_{2} \mathrm{y}_{2}+\ldots+\mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{y}_{\mathrm{k}}\right)=\mathrm{s}_{1} \mathrm{x}_{1}+\mathrm{s}_{2} \mathrm{x}_{2}+\ldots+\mathrm{s}_{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{t}}$.

Equivalently $\mathrm{x}=\left(\mathrm{r}_{1} \mathrm{y}_{1}+\mathrm{r}_{2} \mathrm{y}_{2}+\ldots+\mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{k}} \mathrm{y}_{\mathrm{k}}\right)+\mathrm{s}_{1} \mathrm{x}_{1}+\mathrm{s}_{2} \mathrm{x}_{2}+\ldots+\mathrm{s}_{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{t}}, \mathrm{s}_{\mathrm{i}} \in \mathrm{R}$. Now we have shown that every element of A is linear combination of elements of the set $\left\{r_{1}, r_{2}, \ldots, r_{k}, s_{1}, s_{2}, \ldots, s_{t}\right\}$ i.e. A is finitely generated. It proves the result.
3.6.9 Theorem. Let M be an left R-module and N be a submodule of M . Then M is artinian iff both N and $\frac{\mathrm{M}}{\mathrm{N}}$ are Artinian.

Proof. Suppose that M is Artinian. We will show that every submodule and quotient modules of M are Artinian.

Let N be a submodule of N . Consider the deccending chain $\mathrm{N}_{1} \supseteq \mathrm{~N}_{2}$ $\supseteq \ldots \supseteq \mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}} \supseteq \mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}+1} \supseteq \ldots$ of submodules of N . But then it becomes a descending chain of submodules of M also. Since M is Artinian, therefore, there exist a positive integer k such that $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}}=\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}+\mathrm{i}} \forall \mathrm{i} \geq 0$. Hence N is Artinian.

Let $\frac{M}{N}$ be a factor module of $M$. Consider a descending chain

$$
\frac{\mathrm{M}_{1}}{\mathrm{~N}} \supseteq \frac{\mathrm{M}_{2}}{\mathrm{~N}} \supseteq \ldots \supseteq \frac{\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{k}}}{\mathrm{~N}} \supseteq \frac{\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{k}+1}}{\mathrm{~N}} \supseteq \ldots, \quad \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{i}} \quad \text { are } \quad \text { submodules } \quad \text { of } \mathrm{M}
$$ containing N and are contained in $\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{i}-1}$. Thus we have a descending chain

$\mathrm{M}_{1} \supseteq \mathrm{M}_{2} \supseteq \ldots \supseteq \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{k}} \supseteq \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{k}+1} \supseteq \ldots$ of submodules of M . Since M is Artinian, therefore, there exist a positive integer K such that $\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{k}}=\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{k}+\mathrm{i}} \forall \mathrm{i} \geq 0$. But then $\frac{\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{k}}}{\mathrm{N}}=\frac{\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{k}+\mathrm{i}}}{\mathrm{N}} \forall \mathrm{i} \geq 0$. Hence $\frac{\mathrm{M}}{\mathrm{N}}$ is Artinain.

Conversely suppose that both $N$ and $\frac{M}{N}$ are Artinian submodules of M. We will show that M is Artinian. Let $\mathrm{N}_{1} \supseteq \mathrm{~N}_{2} \supseteq \ldots \supseteq \mathrm{~N}_{\mathrm{k}} \supseteq \mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}+1} \supseteq \ldots$ be the deccending chain of submodules of $M$. Since $N_{i}+N$ is a submodule of $M$ containing $N$, therefore, for each $i, \frac{N_{i}+N}{N}$ is a submodule of $\frac{M}{N}$ such that $\frac{\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{i}}+\mathrm{N}}{\mathrm{N}} \supseteq \frac{\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{i}+1}+\mathrm{N}}{\mathrm{N}} . \quad$ Consider $\quad$ descending $\quad$ chain $\frac{\mathrm{N}_{1}+\mathrm{N}}{\mathrm{N}} \supseteq \frac{\mathrm{N}_{2}+\mathrm{N}}{\mathrm{N}} \supseteq \ldots \supseteq \frac{\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}}+\mathrm{N}}{\mathrm{N}} \supseteq \frac{\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}+1}+\mathrm{N}}{\mathrm{N}} \supseteq \ldots$ of submodules of $\frac{\mathrm{M}}{\mathrm{N}}$. As $\frac{\mathrm{M}}{\mathrm{N}}$ is Artinian, therefore, there exist a positive integer $\mathrm{k}_{1}$ such that
$\frac{\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}_{1}}+\mathrm{N}}{\mathrm{N}}=\frac{\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}_{1}+\mathrm{i}}+\mathrm{N}}{\mathrm{N}}$ for all $\mathrm{i} \geq 0$. But then $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}_{1}}+\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}_{1}+\mathrm{i}}+\mathrm{N}$ for all $\mathrm{i} \geq$ 0.

Since $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{i}} \cap \mathrm{N}$ is a submodule of an Artinian module N and $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{i}} \cap \mathrm{N} \supseteq$ $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{i}+1} \cap \mathrm{~N}$ for all i , therefore, for descending chain $\mathrm{N}_{1} \cap \mathrm{~N}_{\supseteq} \mathrm{N}_{2} \cap \mathrm{~N} \supseteq \ldots \supseteq \mathrm{~N}_{\mathrm{k}} \cap \mathrm{N} \supseteq \ldots \mathrm{N}_{1} \cap \mathrm{~N}$ of submodules of N , there exist a positive integer $\mathrm{k}_{2}$ such that $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}_{2}} \cap \mathrm{~N}=\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}_{2}+\mathrm{i}} \cap \mathrm{N}$ for all $\mathrm{i} \geq 0$. Let $\mathrm{k}=\max \left\{\mathrm{k}_{1}, \mathrm{k}_{2}\right\}$. Then $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}}+\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}+\mathrm{i}}+\mathrm{N}$ and $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}} \cap \mathrm{N}=\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}+\mathrm{i}} \cap \mathrm{N}$ for all i $\geq 0$. Now we will show that if $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}}+\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}+\mathrm{i}}+\mathrm{N}$ and $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}} \cap \mathrm{N}=\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}+\mathrm{i}} \cap \mathrm{N}$, then $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}}=\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}+\mathrm{i}}$ for all $\mathrm{i} \geq 0$. Let $\mathrm{x} \in \mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}}$, then $\mathrm{x} \in \mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}}+\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}+\mathrm{i}}+\mathrm{N}$. Thus $\mathrm{x}=$ $y+z$ where $y \in N_{k+i}$ and $z \in N$. Equivalently, $x-y=z \in N$. Since $y \in N_{k+i}$, therefore, $y \in N_{k}$ also. But then $x-y=z$ also belongs to $N_{k}$. Hence $z \in N_{k} \cap N=$ $N_{k+i} \cap N$ and hence $z=x-y \in N_{k+i}$. Now $x-y \in N_{k+i}$ and $y \in N_{k+i}$ implies that $\mathrm{x} \in \mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}+\mathrm{i}}$. In other words we have shown that $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}} \subseteq \mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}+\mathrm{i}}$. But then $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}}=\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{k}+\mathrm{i}}$ for all $\mathrm{i} \geq 0$. It proves the result.
3.6.10 Theorem. Prove that R-homomorphic image of Noetherian(Artinian) left Rmodule is again Noetherian(Artinian).

Proof. Since homomorphic image of an Noetherian(Artinian) module M is $f(M)$ where $f$ is an homomorphism from $M$ to $R$-module $N$. Being a factor module of $\mathrm{M}, \frac{\mathrm{M}}{\operatorname{Ker} \mathrm{f}}$ is Noetherian(Artinian). As $\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{M}) \cong \frac{\mathrm{M}}{\operatorname{Ker} \mathrm{f}}$, therefore, $f(M)$ is also Noetherian(Artinian).

### 3.7 NOETHERIAN AND ARTINIAN RINGS

3.7.1 Definition. A ring $R$ is said to satisfy ascending (descending) chain condition denoted by $\operatorname{acc}(\mathrm{dcc})$ for ideals if and only if given any sequence of ideals $\mathrm{I}_{1}, \mathrm{I}_{2}$, $\mathrm{I}_{3} \ldots$ of R with $\mathrm{I}_{1} \subseteq \mathrm{I}_{2} \subseteq \ldots \subseteq \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}} \subseteq \ldots\left(\mathrm{I}_{1} \supseteq \mathrm{I}_{2} \supseteq \ldots \supseteq \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}} \supseteq \ldots\right)$, there exist an positive integer n such that $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}}=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{m}}$ for all $\mathrm{m} \geq \mathrm{n}$.

Similarly a ring R is said to satisfy ascending (descending ) chain condition for left (right) ideals if and only if given any sequence of left ideals
$\mathrm{I}_{1}, \mathrm{I}_{2}, \mathrm{I}_{3} \ldots$ of R with $\mathrm{I}_{1} \subseteq \mathrm{I}_{2} \subseteq \ldots \subseteq \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}} \subseteq \ldots\left(\mathrm{I}_{1} \supseteq \mathrm{I}_{2} \supseteq \ldots \supseteq \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}} \supseteq \ldots\right)$, there exist an positive integer $n$ such that $I_{n}=I_{m}$ for all $m \geq n$.
3.7.2 Definition. A ring R is said to be Notherian(Artinian) ring if and only if it satisfies the ascending ()chain conditions for ideals of R. Similarly for non commutative ring, a ring R is said to be left-Notherian(left-Notherian) ring if and only if it satisfies the ascending chain conditions for left ideals (right ideals) of $R$.
3.7.3 Definition. A ring R is said to satisfies the maximum condition if every non empty set of ideals of R , partially ordered by inclusion, has a maximal element.
3.7.4 Theorem. Let R be a ring then the following conditions are equivalent:
(i) R is Noetherian (ii) Maximal condition (for ideals) holds in R (iii) every ideal of $R$ is finitely generated.
Proof. (i) $\Rightarrow$ (ii). Let $f$ be a family of non empty collection of ideals of R and $\mathrm{I}_{1} \in \mathrm{f}$. If $\mathrm{I}_{1} \in$ is not maximal element in $f$, then ther exist $\mathrm{I}_{2} \in f$ such that $\mathrm{I}_{1} \subseteq \mathrm{I}_{2}$. Again if $\mathrm{I}_{2}$ is not maximal then there exist $\mathrm{I}_{3} \in f$ such that $\mathrm{I}_{1} \subseteq \mathrm{I}_{2} \subseteq \mathrm{I}_{3}$. If $f$ has no maximal element, then continuing in this way we get an non terminating ascending chain of ideal of $R$. But it is contradiction to (i) that $R$ is noehterian. Hence $f$ has maximal element.
(ii) $\Rightarrow$ (iii). Let I be an ideal of R and $\mathrm{f}=\{\mathrm{A} \mid \mathrm{A}$ is an ideal of $\mathrm{R}, \mathrm{A}$ is finitely generated and $\mathrm{A} \subseteq \mathrm{I}\}$. As $\{0\} \subseteq \mathrm{I}$ which is finitely generated ideal of R , therefore, $\{0\} \in \mathrm{f}$. By (ii), f has maximal element say M. We will show that $\mathrm{M}=\mathrm{I}$. Suppose that $\mathrm{M} \neq \mathrm{I}$, then there exist an element $\mathrm{a} \in \mathrm{I}$ such that $\mathrm{a} \notin \mathrm{M}$. Since $M$ is finitely generated, therefore, $M=<a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{k}>$. But then $M^{*}=<a_{1}, a_{2}$, $\ldots, \mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{k}}, \mathrm{a}>$ is also finitely generated submodule of I containing M properly. By definition $\mathrm{M}^{*}$ belongs to f , a contradiction to the fact that M is maximal ideal of $f$. Hence $M=I$. But then $I$ is finitely generated. It proves (iii).
(iii) $\Rightarrow$ (i). $\mathrm{I}_{1} \subseteq \mathrm{I}_{2} \subseteq \mathrm{I}_{3} \subseteq \ldots \subseteq \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}} \subseteq \ldots$ be an ascending chain of ideals of R . Then


Now each $a_{i}$ belongs to some $I_{\lambda_{i}}$ of the given chain. Let $n=\max \left\{\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \ldots, \lambda_{\mathrm{k}}\right\}$. Then each $\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{i}} \in \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}}$. Consequently, for $\mathrm{m} \geq \mathrm{n}, \underset{\mathrm{i} \geq 1}{\bigcup \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{i}}}=<\mathrm{a}_{1}, \mathrm{a}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{k}}>\subseteq \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}} \subseteq \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{m}} \subseteq \underset{\mathrm{i} \geq 1}{\cup \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{i}}}$.

Hence $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}}=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{m}}$ for $\mathrm{m} \geq \mathrm{n}$ implies that the given chain of ideals becomes stationary at some point i.e. R is Noetherian.

### 3.8 KEY WORDS

Modules, simple modules, semi simple modules, Noethrian, Artinian.

### 3.9 SUMMARY

In this chapter, we study about modules, simple modules (i.e. modules having no proper submodule), semi-simple modules, Free modules, Noetherian and Artinian rings and modules.

### 3.10 SELF ASSESMENT QUESTIONS

(1) Let $R$ be a noethrian ring. Show that the ring of square matrices over $R$ is also noetherian.
(2) Show that if $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{i}}, \mathrm{i}=1,2,3, \ldots$ is an infinite family of non zero rings and if R is direct sum of member of this family. Then R can not be noetherian.
(3) Let M be a completely reducible module, and let K be a non zero submodule of M . Show that K is completely reducible. Also show that K is direct summand of M .

### 3.11 SUGGESTED READINGS

(1) Modern Algebra; SURJEET SINGH and QAZI ZAMEERUDDIN, Vikas Publications.
(2) Basic Abstract Algebra; P.B. BHATTARAYA, S.K.JAIN, S.R. NAGPAUL, Cambridge University Press, Second Edition.
MAL-521: M. Sc. Mathematics (Advance Abstract Algebra)
Lesson No. 4 Written by Dr. Pankaj Kumar
Lesson: Modules II Vetted by Dr. Nawneet Hooda
STRUCTURE
4.0 OBJECTIVE
4.1 INTRODUCTION
4.2 MORE RESULTS ON NOETHERIAN AND ARTINIAN MODULES AND RINGS
4.3 RESULT ON $H_{R}(M, M)$ AND WEDDENBURN ARTIN THEOREM
4.4 UNIFORM MODULES, PRIMARY MODULES AND NOETHER- LASKAR THOEREM
4.5 SMITH NORMAL FORM
4.6 FINITELY GENERATED ABELIAN GROUPS
4.7 KEY WORDS
4.8 SUMMARY
4.9 SELF ASSESMENT QUESTIONS
4.10 SUGGESTED READINGS
4.0 OBJECTIVEObjective of this paper is to study some more properties of modules

### 4.1 INTRODUCTION

In last chapter, we have studied some more results on modules and rings. In Section, 4.2, we study more results on noetherian and artinian modules and rings. In next section, Weddernburn theorem is studied. Uniform modules, primary modules, noether-laskar theorem and smith normal theorem are studied in next two section. The last section is contained with finitely generated abelian groups.

### 4.2 MORE RESULTS ON NOETHERIAN AND ARTINIAN MODULES AND RINGS

4.2.1 Theorem. Every principal ideal domain is Noetherian.

Solution. Let D be a principal ideal domain and $\mathrm{I}_{1} \subseteq \mathrm{I}_{2} \subseteq \mathrm{I}_{3} \subseteq \ldots \subseteq \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}} \subseteq \ldots$ be an ascending chain of ideals of $D$. Let $\mathrm{I}=\bigcup_{\mathrm{i} \geq 1} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{i}}$. Then I is an ideal of D . Since D is principal ideal domain, therefore, there exist $\mathrm{b} \in \mathrm{D}$ such that $\mathrm{I}=<\mathrm{b}>$. Since $\mathrm{b} \in \mathrm{D}$, therefore, $\mathrm{b} \in \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}}$ for some n . Consequently, for $\mathrm{m} \geq \mathrm{n}$, $\mathrm{I} \subseteq \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}} \subseteq \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{m}} \subseteq \mathrm{I}$. Hence $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}}=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{m}}$ for $\mathrm{m} \geq \mathrm{n}$ implies that the given chain of ideals becomes stationary at some point i.e. R is Noetherian.
(2) $(Z,+,$.$) is a Notherian ring.$
(3) Every field is Notherian ring.
(4) Every finite ring is Notherian ring.
4.2.2 Theorem. (Hilbert basis Theorem). If R is Noetherian ring with identity, then $\mathrm{R}[\mathrm{x}]$ is also Noetherian ring.
Proof. Let I be an arbitrary ideal of $\mathrm{R}[\mathrm{x}]$. To prove the theorem, it is sufficient to show that I is finitely generated. For each integer $\mathrm{t} \geq 0$, define;

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{t}}=\left\{\mathrm{r} \in \mathrm{R}: \mathrm{a}_{0}+\mathrm{a}_{1} \mathrm{x}+\ldots+\mathrm{rx}^{\mathrm{t}}\right\} \cup\{0\}
$$

Then $I_{t}$ is an ideal of $R$ such that $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{t}} \subseteq \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{t}+1}$ for all t . But then $\mathrm{I}_{0} \subseteq \mathrm{I}_{1} \subseteq \mathrm{I}_{2} \subseteq \ldots$ is an ascending chain of ideals of R. But R is Noetherian, therefore, there exist an integer $n$ such $I_{n}=I_{m}$ for all $m \geq 0$. Also each ideal $I_{i}$ of $R$ is finitely generated. Suppose that $I_{i}=<a_{i 1}, a_{i 2}, \ldots, a_{i m_{i}}>$ for $i=0,1,2,3, \ldots, n$, where $a_{i j}$ is the leading coefficient of a polynomial $f_{i j} \in I$ of degree $i$. We will show that $\mathrm{m}_{0}+\mathrm{m}_{1}+\ldots+\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{n}}$ polynomials $\mathrm{f}_{01}, \mathrm{f}_{02}, \ldots, \mathrm{f}_{0 \mathrm{~m}_{0}}, \mathrm{f}_{11}, \mathrm{f}_{12}, \ldots, \mathrm{f}_{1 \mathrm{~m}_{1}}, \ldots, \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{n} 1}$, $f_{n 2}, \ldots, f_{n m_{n}}$ generates I. Let $J=<f_{01}, f_{02}, \ldots, f_{0 m_{0}}, f_{11}, f_{12}, \ldots, f_{1 m_{1}}, \ldots$, $f_{n 1}, f_{n 2}, \ldots, f_{n_{n}}>$. Trivially $J \subseteq I$. Let $f(\neq 0) \in R[x]$ be such that $f \in I$ and of degree $t$ (say): $f=b_{0}+b_{1} x+\ldots+b_{t-1} x^{t-1}+b x^{t}$. We now apply induction on $t$. For $\mathrm{t}=0, \mathrm{f}=\mathrm{b}_{0} \in \mathrm{I}_{0} \subseteq \mathrm{~J}$. Further suppose that every polynomial of I whose degree less than $t$ also belongs to J . Consider following cases:

Case 1. $\mathrm{t}>\mathrm{n}$. As $\mathrm{t}>\mathrm{n}$, therefore, leading coefficient $\mathrm{b}($ of f$) \in \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{t}}=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}}$ (because $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{t}}=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}} \quad \forall \mathrm{t} \geq \mathrm{n}$ ). But then $\mathrm{b}=\mathrm{r}_{1} \mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{n} 1}+\mathrm{r}_{2} \mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{n} 1}+\ldots+\mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{n}}} \mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{nm}}^{\mathrm{n}}, \mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{i}} \in \mathrm{R}$. Now $\mathrm{g}=\mathrm{f}-$ $\left(\mathrm{r}_{1} \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{n} 1}+\mathrm{r}_{2} \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{n} 1}+\ldots+\mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{n}}} \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{nm}}^{\mathrm{n}} \text { ) }\right)^{\mathrm{t}-\mathrm{n}} \in \mathrm{I}$ having degree less than t (because the
coefficient of $x^{t}$ in $g$ is $b-r_{1} a_{n 1}+r_{2} a_{n 1}+\ldots+r_{m_{n}} a_{n m_{n}}=0$, therefore, by induction, $\mathrm{f} \in \mathrm{J}$.
Case (2). $t \leq n$. As $b \in I_{t}$, therefore, $b=s_{1} a_{t 1}+s_{2} a_{t 2}+\ldots+s_{m_{t}} a_{t m_{t}} ; s_{i} \in R$. Then $\mathrm{h}=\mathrm{f}-\left(\mathrm{s}_{1} \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{n} 1}+\mathrm{s}_{2} \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{n} 1}+\ldots+\mathrm{s}_{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{n}}} \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{nm}}^{\mathrm{n}}\right.$ $) \in \mathrm{I}$, having degree less than t . Now by lsinduction hypothesis, $h \in J \Rightarrow f \in J$. Consequently, in either case $I \subseteq J$ and hence $I=J$. Thus I is finitely generated and hence $R[x]$ is Noetherian. It prove the theorem.
4.2.3 Definition. A ring $R$ is said to be an Artinian ring iff it satisfies the descending chain condition for ideals of $R$.
4.2.4 Definition. A ring R is said to satisfy the minimum condition (for ideals) iff every non empty set of ideals of R, partially ordered by inclusion, has a minimal element.
4.2.5 Theorem. Let R be a ring. Then R is Artinian iff R satisfies the minimum condition (for ideals).
Proof. Let R be Artinian and $f$ be a nonempty set of ideal of R. If $\mathrm{I}_{1}$ is not a minimal element in $f$, then we can find another ideal $\mathrm{I}_{2}$ in $f$ such that $\mathrm{I}_{1} \supset \mathrm{I}_{2}$. If $f$ has no minimal element, the repetition of this process we get a non terminating descending chain of ideals of $R$, contradicting to the fact that $R$ is Artinian. Hence $f$ has minimal element.

Conversely suppose that R satisfies the minimal condition. Let $\mathrm{I}_{1} \supseteq \mathrm{I}_{2} \supseteq \mathrm{I}_{3} \ldots$ be an descending chain of ideals of R . Consider $\mathbf{F}=\left\{\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{t}}: \mathrm{t}=1,2\right.$, $3, \ldots\} . \mathrm{I}_{1} \in \mathbf{F} \Rightarrow \mathbf{F}$ is non empty. Then by hypothesis, F has a minimal element $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}}$ for some positive integer $\mathrm{n} \Rightarrow \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{m}} \subseteq \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}} \forall \mathrm{m} \geq \mathrm{n}$.

Now $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{m}} \neq \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}} \Rightarrow \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{m}} \notin \mathrm{F}$ (By the minimality of $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}}$ ), which is not possible. Hence $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{m}}=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}} \forall \mathrm{m} \geq \mathrm{n}$ i.e. R is Artinian.
4.2.6 Theorem. Prove that an homomorphic image of a Noetherian(Artinian) ring is also Noetherian(Artinian).

Proof. Let f be a homomorphic image of a Noetherian ring R onto the ring S. Consider the ascending chain of ideals of S:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{J}_{1} \subseteq \mathrm{~J}_{2} \subseteq \ldots \subseteq \ldots \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Suppose $I_{r}=f^{1}\left(J_{r}\right)$, for $r=1,2,3, \ldots$.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{I}_{1} \subseteq \mathrm{I}_{2} \subseteq \ldots \subseteq \ldots \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Relation shown in (2) is an ascending chain of ideals of R. Since R is Noehterian, therefore, there exist positive integer n such that $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{m}}=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}} \forall \mathrm{m} \geq \mathrm{n}$. This shows that $\mathrm{J}_{\mathrm{m}}=\mathrm{J}_{\mathrm{n}} \forall \mathrm{m} \geq \mathrm{n}$. But then S becomes Noetherian and the result follows.
4.2.7 Corollary. If I is an ideal of a Noetherian(Artinian) ring, then factor module $\frac{R}{I}$ is also Noetherian(Artinian).

Proof. Since $\frac{R}{I}$ is homomorphic image of R, therefore, by Theorem 4.2.10, $\frac{R}{I}$ is Noehterian.
4.2.8 Theorem. Let $I$ be an ideal of a ring R. If $R$ and $\frac{R}{I}$ are both Noehterian rings, then R is also Noetherian.

Proof. Let $\mathrm{I}_{1} \subseteq \mathrm{I}_{2} \subseteq \ldots \subseteq \ldots$ be an ascending chain of ideals of R. Let $\mathrm{f}: \mathrm{R} \rightarrow$ $\frac{\mathrm{R}}{\mathrm{I}}$. It is an natural homomorphism. But then $\mathrm{f}\left(\mathrm{I}_{1}\right) \subseteq \mathrm{f}\left(\mathrm{I}_{2}\right) \subseteq \ldots \subseteq$ is an ascending chain of ideals in $\frac{R}{I}$. Since $\frac{R}{I}$ is Noetherian, therefore, there exist a positive integer n such that $\mathrm{f}\left(\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}}\right)=\mathrm{f}\left(\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}+\mathrm{i}}\right) \quad \forall \mathrm{i} \geq 0$. Also $\left(\mathrm{I}_{1} \cap \mathrm{I}\right) \subseteq\left(\mathrm{I}_{2} \cap \mathrm{I}\right) \subseteq$ $\ldots \subseteq \ldots$ is an ascending chain of ideals of I. As I is Noehterian, therefore, there exsit a positive integer $m$ such that $\left(\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{m}} \cap \mathrm{I}\right)=\left(\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{m}+\mathrm{i}} \cap \mathrm{I}\right)$. Let $\mathrm{r}=\max \{\mathrm{m}, \mathrm{n}\}$. Then $f\left(I_{r}\right)=f\left(I_{r+i}\right)$ and $\left(I_{r} \cap I\right)=\left(I_{r+i} \cap I\right) \quad \forall i \geq 0$. Let $a \in I_{r+i}$, then there exist $x \in I_{r}$ such that $f(a)=f(x)$ i.e. $a+I=x+I$. Then $a-x \in I$ and also $a-x \in I_{r+i}$. This shows that $a-x \in\left(I_{r+i} \cap I\right)=\left(I_{r} \cap I\right)$. Hence $a-x \in I_{r} \Rightarrow a \in I_{r}$ i.e. $I_{r+i} \subseteq I_{r}$. But then $I_{r+i}=I_{r}$ for all $\mathrm{i} \geq 0$. Now we have shown that every ascending chain of ideals of $R$ terminates after a finite number of steps. It shows that R is Noetherian.
4.2.9 Definition. An Artinian domain R is an integral domain which is also an Artinian ring.
4.2.10 Theorem. Any left Artinian domain is a division ring.

Proof. Let a is a non zero element of R. Consider the ascending chain of ideals of R as: $\left.\left.\langle\mathrm{a}\rangle \supseteq<\mathrm{a}^{2}\right\rangle \supseteq<\mathrm{a}^{3}\right\rangle \supseteq \ldots$. . Since R is an Artinian ring, therefore, $\left\langle\mathrm{a}^{\mathrm{n}}\right\rangle$ $=<\mathrm{a}^{\mathrm{n}+\mathrm{i}}>\forall \mathrm{i} \geq 0$. Now $\left\langle\mathrm{a}^{\mathrm{n}}\right\rangle=<\mathrm{a}^{\mathrm{n}+1}>\Rightarrow \mathrm{a}^{\mathrm{n}}=\mathrm{ra}^{\mathrm{n}+1} \Rightarrow \mathrm{ar}=1$ i.e. a is invertible $\Rightarrow$ $R$ is a division ring.
4.2.11 Theorem. Let M be a finitely generated free module over a commutative ring $R$. Then all the basis of $M$ are finite.

Proof. let $\left\{e_{i}\right\}_{i \in \Lambda}$ be a basis and $\left\{x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\}$ be a generator of $M$. Then each $\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{j}}$ can be written as $\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{j}}=\sum_{i} \beta_{i j} e_{i}$ where all except a finite number of $\beta_{\mathrm{ij}}$ 's are zero. Thus the set of all $e_{i}$ 's that occurs in the expression of $x_{j}$ 's, $j=1,2, \ldots, n$.
4.2.12 Theorem. Let $M$ be finitely generated free module over a commutative ring $R$. Then all the basis of M has same number of element.

Proof. Let $M$ has two bases $X$ and $Y$ containing $m$ and $n$ elements respectively. But then $M \cong R^{n}$ and $M \cong R^{m}$. But then $R^{m} \cong R^{n}$. Now we will show that $m=n$. Let $m<n$, $f$ is an isomorphism from $R^{m}$ to $R^{n}$ and $g=f^{1}$. Let $\left\{\mathrm{x}_{1}, \mathrm{x}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{m}}\right\}$ and $\left\{\mathrm{y}_{1}, \mathrm{y}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{y}_{\mathrm{n}}\right\}$ are basis element of $\mathrm{R}^{\mathrm{m}}$ and $\mathrm{R}^{\mathrm{n}}$ respectively. Define

$$
f\left(x_{i}\right)=a_{1 i} y_{1}+a_{2 i} y_{2}+\ldots+a_{n i} y_{n} \text { and } g\left(y_{j}\right)=b_{1 j} x_{1}+b_{2 j} x_{2}+\ldots+b_{m j} x_{m} \text {. Let }
$$ $\mathrm{A}\left(\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{j} i}\right)$ and $\mathrm{B}=\left(\mathrm{b}_{\mathrm{kj}}\right)$ be $\mathrm{n} \times \mathrm{m}$ and $\mathrm{m} \times \mathrm{n}$ matrices over R . Then g $f\left(x_{i}\right)=g\left(\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{j i} y_{j}\right)=\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{j i} g\left(y_{j}\right)=\sum_{k=1}^{m} \sum_{j=1}^{n} b_{k j} a_{j i} x_{k} .1 \leq i \leq m$. Since $g f=I$, therefore, $\quad x_{i}=\sum_{k=1}^{m} \sum_{j=1}^{n} b_{k j} a_{j i} x_{k} \quad$ i.e. $\quad \sum_{j=1}^{n} b_{1 j} a_{j i} x_{1}+\ldots+\sum_{j=1}^{n}\left(b_{i j} a_{j i}-1\right) x_{i}$ $+\ldots+\sum_{\mathrm{j}=1}^{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{b}_{\mathrm{mj}} \mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{ji}} \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{m}}=0$. As $\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}}{ }^{\prime} \mathrm{s}$ are linearly independent, therefore,

$\sum_{j=1}^{n} b_{k j} a_{j i} x_{k}=\delta_{k i}$. Thus $B A=I_{m}$ and $A B=I_{n}$. Let $A^{*}=\left[\begin{array}{ll}A & 0\end{array}\right]$ and $B^{*}=\left[\begin{array}{l}B \\ 0\end{array}\right]$, then $A * B *=I_{n}$ and $B^{*} A^{*}=\left[\begin{array}{cc}I_{m} & 0 \\ 0 & 0\end{array}\right]$. But then $\operatorname{det}\left(A^{*} B^{*}\right)=I_{n}$ and $\operatorname{det}\left(B^{*} A^{*}\right)=0$. Since A* and B* are matrices over commutative ring $R$, so $\operatorname{det}\left(A^{*} B^{*}\right)$ $\operatorname{det}\left(B^{*} A^{*}\right)$, which yield a contradiction. Hence $M \geq N$. By symmetry $N \geq M$ i.e. $M=N$.

### 4.3 RESULT ON $H_{R}(M, M)$ AND WEDDENBURN ARTIN THEOREM

4.3.1 Theorem 4. Let $\mathrm{M}=\oplus \sum_{i=1}^{k} M_{i}$ be a direct sum of R -modules $\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{i}}$. Then
$\operatorname{Hom}_{R}(M, M) \cong\left[\begin{array}{cccc}\operatorname{Hom}_{R}\left(M_{1}, M_{1}\right) & \operatorname{Hom}_{R}\left(M_{2}, M_{1}\right) & \cdots & \operatorname{Hom}_{R}\left(M_{k}, M_{1}\right) \\ \operatorname{Hom}_{R}\left(M_{1}, M_{2}\right) & \operatorname{Hom}_{R}\left(M_{2}, M_{2}\right) & \cdots & \operatorname{Hom}_{R}\left(M_{k}, M_{2}\right) \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ \operatorname{Hom}_{R}\left(M_{1}, M_{k}\right) & \operatorname{Hom}_{R}\left(M_{2}, M_{k}\right) & & \operatorname{Hom}_{R}\left(M_{k}, M_{k}\right)\end{array}\right]$ as a ring (Here right hand side is a ring $T(s a y)$ of $K \times K$ matrices $f=\left(f_{i j}\right)$ under the usual matrix addition and multiplication, where $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{ij}}$ is an element of $\operatorname{Hom}_{\mathrm{R}}\left(\mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{j}}, \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{i}}\right)$ ).
Proof. We know that for are submodules X and $\mathrm{Y}, \operatorname{Hom}_{\mathrm{R}}(\mathrm{X}, \mathrm{Y})$ (=set of all homomorphisms from $X$ to $Y$ ) becomes a ring under the operations ( $f+g$ ) $\mathrm{x}=\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{x})+\mathrm{g}(\mathrm{x})$ and $\mathrm{fg}(\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{f}(\mathrm{g}(\mathrm{x}))$, $\mathrm{f}, \mathrm{g} \in \operatorname{Hom}_{\mathrm{R}}(\mathrm{X}, \mathrm{Y})$ and $\mathrm{x} \in \mathrm{X}$. Further $\lambda_{\mathrm{j}}: \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{j}}$ $\rightarrow \mathrm{M}$ and $\pi_{\mathrm{i}}: \mathrm{M} \rightarrow \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{i}}$ are two mappings defined as:
$\lambda_{\mathrm{j}}\left(\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{j}}\right)=\left(0, \ldots, \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{j}}, \ldots, 0\right)$ and $\pi_{\mathrm{i}}\left(\mathrm{x}_{1}, \ldots, \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}}, \ldots, \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{k}}\right)=\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}}$. (These are called inclusion and projection mappings). Both are homomorphisms. Clearly, $\pi_{\mathrm{i}} \phi$ $\lambda_{j}: M_{j} \rightarrow M_{i}$ is an homomorphism, therefore, $\pi_{i} \phi \lambda_{j} \in \operatorname{Hom}_{R}\left(M_{j}, M_{i}\right)$. Define a mapping $\sigma: \operatorname{Hom}_{R}(\mathrm{M}, \mathrm{M}) \rightarrow \mathrm{T}$ by $\sigma(\phi)=\left(\pi_{i} \phi \lambda_{\mathrm{j}}\right), \phi \in \operatorname{Hom}_{R}(\mathrm{M}, \mathrm{M})$ and $\quad\left(\pi_{i}\right.$ $\phi \lambda_{\mathrm{j}}$ ) is $\mathrm{k} \times \mathrm{k}$ matrix whose $(\mathrm{i}, \mathrm{j})^{\text {th }}$ enrty is $\pi_{\mathrm{i}} \phi \lambda_{\mathrm{j}}$. We will show that $\sigma$ is an isomorphism. Let $\phi_{1}, \phi_{2} \in \operatorname{Hom}_{R}(M, M)$. Then

$$
\begin{gathered}
\sigma\left(\phi_{1}+\phi_{2}\right)=\left(\pi_{\mathrm{i}}\left(\phi_{1}+\phi_{2}\right) \lambda_{\mathrm{j}}\right)=\left(\pi_{\mathrm{i}} \phi_{1} \lambda_{\mathrm{j}}+\pi_{\mathrm{i}} \phi_{2} \lambda_{\mathrm{j}}\right)=\left(\pi_{\mathrm{i}} \phi_{1} \lambda_{\mathrm{j}}\right)+\left(\pi_{\mathrm{i}} \phi_{2} \lambda_{\mathrm{j}}\right) \\
=\sigma\left(\phi_{1}\right)+\sigma\left(\phi_{2}\right) \text { and } \sigma\left(\phi_{1}\right) \sigma\left(\phi_{2}\right)=\left(\pi_{\mathrm{i}} \phi_{1} \lambda_{\mathrm{j}}\right)\left(\pi_{\mathrm{i}} \phi_{2} \lambda_{\mathrm{j}}\right)=\sum_{l=1}^{k} \pi_{i} \phi_{1} \lambda_{l} \pi_{l} \phi_{2} \lambda_{j}
\end{gathered}
$$

$=\pi_{i} \phi_{1} \lambda_{1} \pi_{1} \phi_{2} \lambda_{j}+\pi_{i} \phi_{1} \lambda_{2} \pi_{2} \phi_{2} \lambda_{j}+\ldots+\pi_{i} \phi_{1} \lambda_{k} \pi_{k} \phi_{2} \lambda_{j}$
$=\pi_{i} \phi_{1}\left(\lambda_{1} \pi_{1}+\ldots+\lambda_{k} \pi_{k}\right) \phi_{2} \lambda_{j}$. Since for $\left(\mathrm{x}_{1}, \ldots, \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}}, \ldots, \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{k}}\right)=\mathrm{x} \in \mathrm{M}, \lambda_{\mathrm{i}} \pi_{\mathrm{i}}(\mathrm{x})=$ $\lambda_{i}\left(\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}}\right)=\quad\left(0, \ldots, \quad \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}}, \quad \ldots, 0\right), \quad$ therefore, $\quad\left(\lambda_{1} \pi_{1}+\lambda_{2} \pi_{2}+\ldots+\lambda_{k} \pi_{k}\right)(\mathrm{x})=$ $\left(\lambda_{1} \pi_{1}(x)+\lambda_{2} \pi_{2}(x)+\ldots+\lambda_{k} \pi_{k}(x)=\left(\mathrm{x}_{1}, \ldots, 0\right)+\left(0, \mathrm{x}_{2}, \ldots, 0\right)+\ldots+\left(0, \ldots, \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{k}}\right)=\right.$ $\left(\mathrm{x}_{1}, \mathrm{x}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{k}}\right)=\mathrm{x}$. Hence $\left(\lambda_{1} \pi_{1}+\lambda_{2} \pi_{2}+\ldots+\lambda_{k} \pi_{k}\right)=\mathrm{I}$ on M . Thus $\sigma\left(\phi_{1}\right) \sigma\left(\phi_{2}\right)=\pi_{i} \phi_{1} \phi_{2} \lambda_{j}=\sigma\left(\phi_{1} \phi_{2}\right)$. Hence $\sigma$ is an homomorphism. Now we will show that $\sigma$ is one-one. For it let $\sigma(\phi)=\left(\pi_{\mathrm{i}} \phi \lambda_{\mathrm{j}}\right)=0$. Then $\pi_{\mathrm{i}} \phi \lambda_{\mathrm{j}}=0$ for each $\mathrm{i}, \mathrm{j} ; 1 \leq \mathrm{i}, \mathrm{j} \leq \mathrm{k}$. But then $\pi_{1} \phi \lambda_{\mathrm{j}}+\pi_{2} \phi \lambda_{\mathrm{j}}+\ldots+\pi_{\mathrm{k}} \phi \lambda_{\mathrm{j}}=0$. Since $\sum_{i=1}^{k} \pi_{i}$ is an identity mapping on M , therefore, $\left(\sum_{i=1}^{k} \pi_{i}\right) \phi \lambda_{j} \Rightarrow \phi \lambda_{j}=0$. But then $\phi \sum_{j=1}^{k} \lambda_{j}=$ 0 and hence $\phi=0$. Therefore, the mapping is one-one. Let $f=\left(f_{\mathrm{ij}}\right) \in \mathrm{T}$, where $f_{i \mathrm{ij}}: \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{j}} \rightarrow \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is an R-homomorphism. Set $\psi=\sum_{i, j} \lambda_{i} f_{i j} \pi_{j}$. Since for each $i$ and j, $\lambda_{i} f_{i j} \pi_{j}$ is an homomorphism from $M$ to $M$, therefore, $\sum_{i, j} \lambda_{i} f_{i j} \pi_{j}$ is also an element of $\operatorname{Hom}(M, M)$. Since $\sigma(\phi)$ is a square matrix of order $k$, whose $(s, t)$ entry is $f_{\mathrm{st}}$, therefore, $\sigma(\psi)=\left(\pi_{\mathrm{s}}\left(\sum_{i, j} \lambda_{i} f_{i j} \pi_{j}\right) \lambda_{\mathrm{t}}\right)$. As $\pi_{\mathrm{p}} \lambda_{\mathrm{q}}=\delta_{\mathrm{pq}}$, therefore, $\pi_{\mathrm{s}}($ $\left.\sum_{i, j} \lambda_{i} f_{i j} \pi_{j}\right) \lambda_{\mathrm{t}}=f_{\mathrm{st}}$. Hence $\sigma(\psi)=\left(f_{\mathrm{ij}}\right)=f$ i.e. mapping is onto also. Thus $\sigma$ is an isomorphism. It proves the result.
4.3.2 Definition. Nil Ideal. A left ideal $A$ of $R$ is called nil ideal if each element of it nilpotent.
Example. Every Nilpotent ideal is nil ideal.
4.3.3 Theorem. If J is nil left ideal in an Artinian ring R , then J is nilpotent.

Proof. Suppose $J^{k} \neq(0)$. For some positive integer k. Consider a family $\{J$, $\left.\mathrm{J}^{2}, \ldots\right\}$. Because R is Artinian ring, this family has minimal element say $B=J^{m}$. Then $B^{2}=J^{2 m}=J^{m}=B$ implies that $B^{2}=B$. Now consider another family $f=\{\mathrm{A} \mid \mathrm{A}$ is left ideal contained in B with $\mathrm{BA} \neq(0)$. As $\mathrm{BB}=\mathrm{B} \neq(0)$, therefore, $f$ is non empty. Since it is a family of left ideals of an Artinian ring R, therefore, it
has minimal element. Let A be that minimal element in $f$. Then $\mathrm{BA} \neq(0)$ i.e. there exist a in A such that $\mathrm{Ba} \neq(0) \mathrm{Because} \mathrm{A}$ is an ideal, therefore, $\mathrm{Ba} \subseteq \mathrm{A}$ and $B(B a)=B^{2} a=B a \neq(0)$. Hence $\mathrm{Ba} \in f$. Now the minimality of A implies that $\mathrm{Ba}=\mathrm{A}$. Thus $\mathrm{ba}=\mathrm{a}$ for some $\mathrm{b} \in \mathrm{B}$. But then $\mathrm{b}^{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{a}=\mathrm{a} \forall \mathrm{i} \geq 1$. Since b is nilpotent element, therefore, $a=0$, a contradiction. Hence for some integer $k, J^{k}=(0)$.

Theorem. Let R be Noetherian ring. Then the sum of nilpotent ideals in R is a nilpotent ideal.

Proof. Let $\mathrm{B}=\sum_{i \in \Lambda} A_{i}$ be the sum of nilpotent ideals in $R$. Since $R$ is noetherian, therefore, every ideal of $R$ is finitely generated. Hence $B$ is also finitely generated. Let $\left.B=<x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{t}\right\rangle$. Then each $x_{i}$ lies in some finite number of $A_{i}$ 's say $A_{1}, A_{2}, \ldots, A_{n}$. Thus $B=A_{1}+A_{2}+\ldots+A_{n}$. But we know that finite sum of nilpotent ideals is nilpotent. Hence $B$ is nilpotent.
4.3.4 Lemma. Let A be a minimal left ideal in R. Then either $A^{2}=(0)$ or $A=R e$.

Proof. Suppose that $A^{2} \neq(0)$. Then there exist $a \in A$ sucht that $A a \neq(0)$. But $A a$ $\subseteq \mathrm{A}$ and the minimality of A shows that $\mathrm{Aa}=\mathrm{A}$. From this it follows that there exist e in A such that ea $=a$. As a is non zero, therefore, ea $\neq 0$ and hence $\mathrm{e} \neq 0$. Let $B=\{c \in A \mid c a=0\}$, then $B$ is a left ideal of A. Since ea $\neq 0$, therefore, $e \notin$ B. Hence $B$ is proper ideal of $A$. Again minimality of $A$ implies that $B=(0)$. Since $e^{2} a=e e a=e a \Rightarrow\left(e^{2}-e\right) a=0$, therefore, $\left(e^{2}-e\right) \in B=(0)$. Hence $e^{2}=e$. i.e e is an idempotent in R. As $0 \neq \mathrm{e}=\mathrm{e}^{2}=\mathrm{e} . \mathrm{e} \in \mathrm{Re}$, therefore, Re is a non zero subset of A. But then $\mathrm{Re}=\mathrm{A}$. It proves the result.
4.3.5 Theorem. (Wedderburn-Artin). Let R be a left (or right) artinian ring with unity and no nonzero nilpotent ideals. Then R is isomorphic to a finite direct sum of matrix rings over the division ring.
Proof. First we will show that each non zero left ideal in $R$ is of the form Re for some idempotent. Let A be a non-zero left ideal in R. Since $R$ is artinian, therefore, A is also artinian and hence every family of left ideal of A contains a minimal element i.e. A has a minimal ideal $M$ say. But then $M^{2}=(0)$ or $M=\operatorname{Re}$ for some idempotent $e$ of $R$. If $M^{2}=(0)$, then
$(\mathrm{MR})^{2}=(\mathrm{MR})(\mathrm{MR})=\mathrm{M}(\mathrm{RM}) \mathrm{R}=\mathrm{MMR}=\mathrm{M}^{2} \mathrm{R}=(0)$. But then MR is nilpotent. Thus by given hypothesis $\mathrm{MR}=(0)$. Now $\mathrm{MR}=(0)$ implies that $\mathrm{M}=(0)$, a contradiction. Hence $\mathrm{M}=$ Re. This yields that each non zero left ideal contains a nonzero idempotent. Let $\mathrm{f}=\{\mathrm{R}(1-\mathrm{e}) \cap \mathrm{A} \mid \mathrm{e}$ is a non-zero idempotent in A$\}$. Then $f$ is non empty. Because $M$ is artinian, $f$ has a minimal member say $R(1-$ e) $\cap \mathrm{A}$. We will show that $\mathrm{R}(1-\mathrm{e}) \cap \mathrm{A}=(0)$. If $\mathrm{R}(1-e) \cap \mathrm{A} \neq(0)$ then it has a non zero idempotent $e_{1}$. Since $e_{1}=r(1-e)$, therefore, $e_{1} e=r(1-e) e=r\left(e-e^{2}\right)=0$. Take $e^{*}=e+e_{1}-e e_{1}$. Then $\left(e^{*}\right)^{2}=\left(e+e_{1}-e e_{1}\right)\left(e+e_{1}-e e_{1}\right)=e e+e_{1} e-e e_{1} e+e e_{1}+$ $\mathrm{e}_{1} \mathrm{e}_{1}-\mathrm{ee}_{1} \mathrm{e}_{1}-\mathrm{eee}_{1}-\mathrm{e}_{1} \mathrm{ee}_{1}+\mathrm{ee}_{1} \mathrm{ee}_{1}=\mathrm{e}+0-\mathrm{e} 0+\mathrm{ee}_{1}+\mathrm{e}_{1}-\mathrm{ee}_{1}-\mathrm{ee}_{1}-0 \mathrm{e}_{1}+e 0 \mathrm{e}_{1}=\mathrm{e}$ $+e_{1}-e_{1}=e^{*}$ i.e. we have shown that $e^{*}$ is an idempotent. But $e_{1} e^{*}=e_{1} e+e_{1} e_{1}$ $-\mathrm{e}_{1} \mathrm{ee}_{1}=\mathrm{e}_{1} \neq 0$ implies that $\mathrm{e}_{1} \notin \mathrm{R}\left(1-\mathrm{e}^{*}\right) \cap \mathrm{A}$. (Because if $\mathrm{e}_{1} \in \mathrm{R}\left(1-\mathrm{e}^{*}\right) \cap \mathrm{A}$, then $e_{1}=r\left(1-e^{*}\right)$ for some $r \in R$ and then $\left.e_{1} e^{*}=r\left(1-e^{*}\right) e^{*}=r\left(e^{*}-e^{*} e^{*}\right)=0\right)$. More over for $r\left(1-e^{*}\right) \in R\left(1-e^{*}\right), r\left(1-e^{*}\right)=r\left(1-e-e_{1}+e e_{1}\right)=r\left(1-e-e_{1}(1-e)\right)=r(1-$ $\left.e_{1}\right)(1-e)=s(1-e)$ for $s=r\left(1-e_{1}\right) \in R$, therefore, Hence $R\left(1-e^{*}\right) \cap A$ is proper subset of $\mathrm{R}(1-\mathrm{e}) \cap \mathrm{A}$. But it is a contradiction to the minimality of $\mathrm{R}(1-\mathrm{e}) \cap \mathrm{A}$ in f. Hence $R(1-e) \cap A=(0)$. Since for $a \in A, a(1-e) \in R(1-e) \cap A$, therefore, $a(1-$ e) $=(0)$ i.e. $a=a e . ~ T h e n ~ A ~ \supseteq \operatorname{Re} \supseteq \mathrm{Ae} \supseteq \mathrm{A} \Rightarrow \mathrm{A}=$ Re.

For an idempotent e of $R, \operatorname{Re} \cap R(1-e)=(0)$. Because if $x \in \operatorname{Re} \cap R(1-e)$, then $\mathrm{x}=\mathrm{re}$ and $\mathrm{x}=\mathrm{s}(1-\mathrm{e})$ for some r and s belonging to R . But then $\mathrm{re}=\mathrm{s}(1-\mathrm{e}) \Rightarrow$ ree $=s(1-e) e \Rightarrow r e=s\left(e-e^{2}\right)=0$ i.e. $x=0$. Hence $\operatorname{Re} \cap R(1-e)=(0)$. Now let $S$ be the sum of all minimal left ideals in $R$. Then $S=R e$ for some idempotent e in $R$. If $\mathrm{R}(1-\mathrm{e}) \neq(0)$, then there exist a minimal left ideal A in $\mathrm{R}(1-\mathrm{e})$. But then $\mathrm{A} \subseteq$ $\operatorname{Re} \cap \mathrm{R}(1-\mathrm{e})=(0), \quad \mathrm{a}$ contradiction. Hence , $\quad \mathrm{R}(1-\mathrm{e})=(0)$ i.e $R=\operatorname{Re}=S=\sum_{i \in \Lambda} A_{i}$ where $\left(A_{i}\right)_{i \in \Lambda}$ is the family of minimal left ideals in $R$. But then there exist a subfamily $\left(\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{i}}\right)_{\mathrm{i} \in \Lambda^{*}}$ of the family $\left(\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{i}}\right)_{i \in \Lambda}$ such that $\mathrm{R}=\oplus \sum_{\mathrm{i} \in \Lambda^{*}} \mathrm{~A}_{\mathrm{i}}$. Let $1=\mathrm{e}_{\mathrm{i}_{1}}+\mathrm{e}_{\mathrm{i}_{2}}+\ldots+\mathrm{e}_{\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{n}}}$. Then $\mathrm{R}=\mathrm{Re}_{\mathrm{i}_{1}} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{Re}_{\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{n}}}$ (because for $r \in R, \quad 1=e_{i_{1}}+e_{i_{2}}+\ldots+e_{i_{n}} \Rightarrow r=\mathrm{e}_{i_{1}}+\mathrm{re}_{\mathrm{i}_{2}}+\ldots+\mathrm{e}_{\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{n}}}$ ). After reindexing if necessary, we may write $\mathrm{R}=\mathrm{Re}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{Re}_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{Re}_{\mathrm{n}}$, a direct sum of minimal left ideals. In this family of minimal left ideals $\mathrm{Re}_{1}, \mathrm{Re}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{Re}_{\mathrm{n}}$, choose a largest subfamily consisting of all minimal left ideals that are not isomorphic to each other as left R-modules. After renumbering if necessary, let this
subfamily be $\mathrm{Re}_{1}, \mathrm{Re}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{Re}_{\mathrm{k}}$. Suppose the number of left ideal in the family ( $\mathrm{Re}_{\mathrm{i}}$ ), $1 \leq \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{n}$, that are isomorphic to $\mathrm{Re}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is $\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{i}}$. Then $R=\overbrace{\left[\operatorname{Re}_{1} \oplus \ldots\right]}^{\mathrm{n}_{1} \text { summands }} \oplus \oplus \overbrace{\left[\operatorname{Re}_{2} \oplus \ldots\right]}^{\mathrm{n}_{2} \text { summands }} \oplus \ldots \oplus \overbrace{\left[\operatorname{Re}_{\mathrm{k}} \oplus \ldots\right]}^{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{k}} \text { summands }}$ where each set of brackets contains pair wise isomorphic minimal left ideals, and no minimal left ideal in any pair of bracket is isomorphic to minimal left ideal in another pair. Since $\operatorname{Hom}_{R}\left(\operatorname{Re}_{\mathrm{i}}, \mathrm{Re}_{\mathrm{j}}\right)=(0)$ for $\mathrm{i} \neq \mathrm{j}, 1 \leq \mathrm{i}, \mathrm{j} \leq \mathrm{k}$ and $\operatorname{Hom}_{R}\left(\mathrm{Re}_{\mathrm{i}}, \mathrm{Re}_{\mathrm{i}}\right)=\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is a division ring(by shcur's lemma). Thus by Theorem 4, we get $\operatorname{Hom}_{R}(R, R) \cong$
$\cong\left(\mathrm{D}_{1}\right)_{\mathrm{n}_{1}} \oplus \ldots \oplus\left(\mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{k}}\right)_{\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{k}}}$. But since $\operatorname{Hom}_{\mathrm{R}}(\mathrm{M}, \mathrm{M}) \cong \mathrm{R}^{\mathrm{op}}$ ( under the mapping f: $R^{\text {op }} \rightarrow \operatorname{Hom}_{R}(M, M)$ given by $f(a)=a^{*}$ where $\left.a^{*}(x)=a 0 x=x a\right)$ as rings and the opposite ring of a division ring is a division ring. Since $R^{0 p} \cong R$, therefore, $R$ is finite direct sum of matrix rings over division rings.

### 4.4 UNIFORM MODULES, PRIMARY MODULES AND NOETHERLASKAR THOEREM

4.4.1 Definition. Uniform module. A non zero module M is called uniform if any two nonzero submodules of M have non zero intersection.
Example. Z as Z-module is uniform as: Since Z is principal ideal domain, therefore, the two sub-modules of it are $<a>$ and $<b>$ say, then $<a b>$ is another submodule which is contained in both $<\mathrm{a}>$ and $<\mathrm{b}>$. Hence intersection of any two nonzero sub-modules of M is non zero. Thus Z is a uniform module over Z.
4.4.2 Definition. If U and V are uniform modules, we say U is sub-isomorphic to V provided that U and V contains non zero isomorphic sub-modules.
4.4.3 Definition. A module M is called primary if each non zero sub-module of M has uniform sub-module and any two uniform sub-modules of $M$ are subisomorphic.

Example. Z is a primary module over Z .
4.4.4 Theorem. Let M be a Noetherian module or any module over a Noetherian ring. Then each non zero submodule contains a uniform module.

Proof. Let $N$ be a non zero submodule of $M$. Then there exist $x(\neq 0) \in N$. Consider the submodule $x R$ of $N$. Then it is enough to prove that $x R$ contains a uniform module. If $M$ is Noetherian, then the every submodule of $M$ is noetherian and hence $x R$ is also noetherian and if R is Noethrian then, being a homomorphic image of Noetherian ring R, xR is also Noetherian. Thus, for both cases, $x R$ is Noetherian.

Consider a family $\boldsymbol{f}$ of submodules of xR as: $\boldsymbol{f}=\{\mathrm{N} \mid \mathrm{N}$ has a zero intersection with at least one submodule of $x R\}$. Then $\{0\} \in f$. Since $x R$ is noetherian, therefore, $\boldsymbol{f}$ has maximal element K (say). Then there exist an submodule $U$ of $x R$ such that $K \cap U=\{0\}$. We claim $U$ is uniform. Otherwise, there exist submodules $A$, $B$ of $U$ such that $A \cap B=\{0\}$. Since $K \cap U=\{0\}$, therefore, we can talk about $K \oplus A$ as a submodule of $x R$ such that $K \oplus A$ $\cap B=\{0\}$. But then $K \oplus A \in f$, a contradiction to the maximality of $K$. This contradiction show that $U$ is uniform. Hence $U \subseteq x R \subseteq N$. Thus every submodule N contains a uniform submodule.
4.4.5 Definition. If R is a commutative noetherian ring and P is a prime ideal of R , then $P$ is said to be associated with module $M$ if $R / P$ imbeds in $M$ or equivalently, $\mathrm{P}=\mathrm{r}(\mathrm{x})$ for some $\mathrm{x} \in \mathrm{M}$, where $\mathrm{r}(\mathrm{x})=\{\mathrm{a} \in \mathrm{R} \mid \mathrm{xa}=0\}$.
4.4.6 Definition. A module M is called P - primary for some prime ideal P if P is the only prime associated with M .
4.4.7 Theorem. Let $U$ be a uniform module over a commutative noetherain ring $R$. Then $U$ contains a submodule isomorphic to $\mathrm{R} / \mathrm{P}$ for precisely one prime ideal $P$. In other words $U$ subisomorphic to $R / P$ for precisely one ideal $P$.

Proof. Consider the family $f$ of annihilators of ideals $r(x)$ for non zero $x \in U$. Being a family of ideals of noetherian ring $R, f$ has a maximal element $r(x)$ say. We will show that $\mathrm{P}=\mathrm{r}(\mathrm{x})$ is prime ideal of R . For it let $\mathrm{ab} \in \mathrm{r}(\mathrm{x}), \mathrm{a} \notin \mathrm{r}(\mathrm{x})$. As $a b \in r(x) \Rightarrow(a b) x=0$. Since $x a \neq 0$, therefore, $b(x a)=0 \Rightarrow b \in r(x a)$. More over for $\mathrm{t} \in \mathrm{r}(\mathrm{xa}) \Rightarrow \mathrm{t}(\mathrm{xa})=0 \Rightarrow(\mathrm{ta}) \mathrm{x}=0 \Rightarrow \mathrm{r}(\mathrm{xa}) \in f$. Clearly $\mathrm{r}(\mathrm{x}) \subseteq \mathrm{r}(\mathrm{xa})$. Thus the maximality of $r(x)$ in $f$ implies that $r(x a)=r(x)$ i.e. $b \in r(x)$. Hence $r(x)$ is prime ideal of $R$. Define a mapping from $R$ to $x R$ by $\theta(r)=x r$. Then it is an homomorphism from $R$ to $x R$. Kernal $\theta=\{r \in R \mid x r=0\}$. Then Kernal $\theta=$ $r(x)$. Hence by fundamental theorem on homomorphism, $R / r(x) \cong x R=R / P$. Therefore $R / P$ is embeddable in $U$. Hence $[R / P]=[R / Q]$. this implies that there exist cyclic submodules $x R$ and $y R$ of $R / P$ and $R / Q$ respectively such that $x R \cong y R$. But then $R / P \cong R / Q$, which yields $P=Q$. It prove the theorem.
4.4.8 Note. The ideal in the above theorem is called the prime ideal associated with the uniform module U .
4.4.9 Theorem. Let M be a finitely generated ideal over a commutative noetherian ring R. Then there are only a finite number of primes associated with M.

Proof. Take a family $f$ consisting of the direct sum of cyclic uniform submodules of M. Since every submodule $M$ over a noehtrian ring contains a uniform submdule, therefore, $f$ is non empty. Define a relation $\leq$, on the set of elements of $f$ by $\oplus \sum_{i \in \mathrm{I}} \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{R} \leq \oplus \sum_{\mathrm{j} \in \mathrm{J}} \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{j}} \mathrm{R}$ iff $\mathrm{I} \subseteq \mathrm{J}$ and $\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{R} \subseteq \mathrm{y}_{\mathrm{j}} \mathrm{R}$ for some $\mathrm{j} \in \mathrm{J}$. This relation is a partial order relation on $f$. By Zorn's lemma F has a maximal member $K=\oplus \underset{i \in I}{ } x_{i} R$. Since $M$ is noetherian, therefore, $K$ is finitely generated. Thus $K=\oplus \sum_{i=1}^{t} x_{i} R$. By theorem, 4.2.7, there exist $x_{i} a_{i} \in x_{i} R$ such that $\mathrm{r}\left(\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{i}}\right)=\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{i}}$, the ideal associated with $\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{R}$. Set $\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}}{ }^{*}=\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{i}}$ and $\mathrm{K}^{*}=\oplus \sum_{\mathrm{i}=1}^{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}}^{*} \mathrm{R}$.

Let $\mathrm{Q}=\mathrm{r}(\mathrm{x})$ be the prime ideal associated with M . We shall show that $\mathrm{Q}=\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{i}}$ for some $\mathrm{i}, 1 \leq \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{t}$.

Since K is a maximal member of $f$, therefore, K as well as $\mathrm{K}^{*}$ has the property that each has non zero intersection with each submodule L of M. Now let $0 \neq y \in x R \cap K^{*}$. Write $y=\oplus \sum_{i=1}^{t} x_{i}^{*} b_{i}=x b$. We will show that $r\left(x_{i}^{*} b_{i}\right)=$ $\mathrm{r}\left(\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}}{ }^{*}\right)$ whenever $\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}}{ }^{*} \mathrm{~b}_{\mathrm{i}} \neq 0$. Clearly, $\mathrm{r}\left(\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}}{ }^{*}\right) \subseteq \mathrm{r}\left(\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}}{ }^{*} \mathrm{~b}_{\mathrm{i}}\right)$. Let $\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}}{ }^{*} \mathrm{~b}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{c}=0$. Then $\mathrm{b}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{c}$ $r\left(x_{i}^{*}\right)=P_{i}$ and so $c \in P_{i}$ since $b_{i} \notin P_{i}$. Hence, $c \in r\left(x_{i}^{*}\right)$.

Further, we note $\mathrm{Q}=\mathrm{r}(\mathrm{x})=\mathrm{r}(\mathrm{y})=\bigcap_{\mathrm{i}=1}^{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{r}\left(\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}}^{*} \mathrm{~b}_{\mathrm{i}}\right)=\underset{\mathrm{i} \in \Lambda}{\cap \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{i}}}$, omitting those terms from $\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}}{ }^{*} \mathrm{~b}_{\mathrm{i}}=0$, where $\Lambda \subset\{1,2, \ldots, \mathrm{t}\}$. Therefore, $\mathrm{Q} \subseteq \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{i}}$ for all $\mathrm{i} \in \Lambda$. Also $\prod_{\mathrm{i} \in \Lambda} \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{i}} \subset \bigcap_{\mathrm{i} \in \Lambda} \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{i}}=\mathrm{Q}$. Since Q is a prime ideal, at least one $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{i}}$ appearing in the product $\prod_{\mathrm{i} \in \Lambda} \mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{i}}$ must be contained in Q . Hence $\mathrm{Q}=\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{i}}$ for some i .
4.4.10 Theorem.(Noether-Laskar theorem). Let M be a finitely generated ideal over a commutative noetherian ring $R$. Then there exist a finite family $\mathrm{N}_{1}, \mathrm{~N}_{2}, \ldots$, $N_{t}$ of submodules of $M$ such that
(a) $\bigcap_{i=1}^{t} N_{i}=(0)$ and $\underset{\substack{\mathrm{i}=1 \\ \mathrm{i} \neq \mathrm{i}_{0}}}{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{i}} \neq(0)$ for $1 \leq \mathrm{i}_{0} \leq \mathrm{t}$.
(b) Each quotient module $M / N_{i}$ is a $P_{i}$ - primary module for some prime ideal $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{i}}$.
(c) The $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{i}}$ are all distinct, $1 \leq \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{t}$.
(d) The primary component $N_{i}$ is unique iff $P_{i}$ does not contain $P_{j}$ for some $\mathrm{j} \neq \mathrm{i}$.

Proof. Let $\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{i}}, 1 \leq \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{t}$, be a uniform sub module obtained as in the proof of the Theorem 4.4.9. Consider the family $\{\mathrm{K} \mid \mathrm{K}$ is a subset of M and K contains no submodule subisomorphic to $\left.\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{i}}\right\}$. Let $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{i}}$ be a maximal member of this family, then with this choice of $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{i}}$, (a), (b) and (c) follows directly.

### 4.5 SMITH NORMAL FORM

4.5.1 Theorem. Obtain Smith normal form of given matrix. Or if $A$ is $m \times n$ matrix over a principal ideal domain R . Then A is equivalent to a matrix that has the
diagonal form $\left[\begin{array}{ccccc}a_{1} & & & & \\ & a_{2} & & & \\ & & \ddots & & \\ & & & a_{r} & \\ & & & & \ddots\end{array}\right]$ where $a_{i} \neq 0$ and $a_{1}\left|a_{2}\right| a_{3}|\ldots| a_{r}$.
Proof. For non zero a, define the length $l(a)=$ no of prime factors appearing in the factorizing of, $a=p_{1} p_{2} \ldots p_{r}$ ( $p_{i}$ need not be distinct primes). We also take 1 (a) if $a$ is unit in R. If $A=0$, then the result is trivial otherwise, let $a_{i j}$ be the non zero element with minimum $l\left(\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{ij}}\right)$. Apply elementary row and column operation to bring it $(1,1)$ position. Now $a_{11}$ entry of the matrix so obtained is of smallest $l$ value i.e. the non zero element of this matrix at $(1,1)$ position. Let $\mathrm{a}_{11}$ does not divide $\mathrm{a}_{1 \mathrm{k}}$. Interchanging second and $\mathrm{k}^{\text {th }}$ column so that we may suppose that $a_{11}$ does not divide $a_{12}$. Let $d=\left(a_{11}, a_{12}\right)$ be the greatest common divisor of $\mathrm{a}_{11}$ and $\mathrm{a}_{12}$, then $\mathrm{a}_{11}=\mathrm{du}, \mathrm{a}_{12}=\mathrm{dv}$ and $l(\mathrm{~d})<l\left(\mathrm{a}_{11}\right)$. As $d=\left(a_{11}, a_{12}\right)$, therefore we can find $s$ and $t \in R$ such that $d=\left(s a_{11}+\mathrm{ta}_{12}\right)=d(s u+$ vt). Then we get that $A\left[\begin{array}{ccccc}u & t & & & \\ v & -s & & & \\ & & 1 & & \\ & & & 1 & \\ & & & & 1\end{array}\right]$ is a matrix whose first row is $(d, 0$, $\left.b_{13}, b_{14}, \ldots b_{1 n}\right)$ where $l(d)<l\left(a_{11}\right)$. If $a_{11} \mid a_{12}$, then $a_{12}=k a_{11}$. On applying, the operation $\mathrm{C}_{2}-\mathrm{kC}_{1}$ and $\frac{1}{u} C_{1}$ we get the matrix whose first row is again of the form ( $\mathrm{d}, 0, \mathrm{~b}_{13}, \mathrm{~b}_{14}, \ldots \mathrm{~b}_{1 \mathrm{n}}$ ). Continuing in this way we get a matrix whose first row and first column has all its entries zero except the first entry. This matrix is $P_{1} A Q_{1}\left[\begin{array}{cccc}a_{1} & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & & & \\ \vdots & & A_{1} & \\ 0 & & & \end{array}\right]$, where $A_{1}$ is $(m-1) \times(n-1)$ matrix, and $P_{1}$ and $\mathrm{Q}_{1}$ are $\mathrm{m} \times \mathrm{m}$ and $\mathrm{n} \times \mathrm{n}$ invertible matrices respectively. Now applying the same
 2) matrix, and $P_{2}^{\prime}$ and $Q_{2}^{\prime}$ are $(m-1) \times(m-1)$ and $(n-1) \times(n-1)$ invertible matrices
respectively. Let $\mathrm{P}_{2}=\left[\begin{array}{cc}1 & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{P}_{2}^{\prime}\end{array}\right]$ and $\mathrm{Q}_{2}=\left[\begin{array}{cc}1 & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{Q}_{2}^{\prime}\end{array}\right]$. Then $\mathrm{P}_{2} \mathrm{P}_{1} \mathrm{AQ}_{1} \mathrm{Q}_{2}=$ $\left[\begin{array}{cccc}\mathrm{a}_{1} & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{a}_{2} & & \\ \vdots & & \mathrm{~A}_{2} & \\ 0 & & & \end{array}\right]$. Continuing in this way we get matrices P and Q such that
PAQ $=\operatorname{diag}\left(a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{r}, 0, \ldots 0\right)$. Finally we show that we can reduce PAQ so that $a_{1}\left|a_{2}\right| a_{3} \mid \ldots$. For it if $a_{1}$ does not divide $a_{2}$, then add second row to the first row and obtain the matrix whose first row is $\left(a_{1}, a_{2}, 0,0, \ldots, 0\right)$. Again multiplying PAQ by a matrix of the form $\left[\begin{array}{ccccc}u & t & & & \\ v & -s & & & \\ & & 1 & & \\ & & & 1 & \\ & & & & 1\end{array}\right]$ we can obtain a matrix such that $a_{1} \mid a_{2}$. Hence we can always obtain a matrix of required form.
4.5.2 Example. Obtain the normal smith form for a matrix $\left[\begin{array}{lll}1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 0\end{array}\right]$.

Solution. $\quad\left[\begin{array}{lll}1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 0\end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{\mathrm{R}_{2}-4 \mathrm{R}_{1}}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& {\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
0 & -3 & -12
\end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{\mathrm{C}_{2}-2 \mathrm{C}_{1}, \mathrm{C}_{3}-3 \mathrm{C}_{1}}} \\
& {\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & -3 & -12
\end{array}\right]^{\mathrm{C}_{3}-4 \mathrm{C}_{2}}} \\
& {\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & -3 & -12
\end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{\mathrm{C}_{3}-4 \mathrm{C}_{2}}\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & -3 & 0
\end{array}\right]^{-\mathrm{R}_{2}}\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 3 & 0
\end{array}\right] .}
\end{aligned}
$$

### 4.6 FINITELY GENERATED ABELIAN GROUPS

4.6.1 Note. Let $G_{1}, G_{2}, \ldots G_{n}$ be a family of subgroup of $G$ and let $G^{*}=G_{1} \ldots G_{n}$. Then the following are equivalent.
(i) $\mathrm{G}_{1} \times \ldots \times \mathrm{G}_{\mathrm{n}} \cong \mathrm{G}^{*}$ under the mapping ( $\mathrm{g}_{1}, \mathrm{~g}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{~g}_{\mathrm{n}}$ ) to $\mathrm{g}_{1} \mathrm{~g}_{2} \ldots \mathrm{~g}_{\mathrm{n}}$
(ii) $\mathrm{G}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is normal in $\mathrm{G}^{*}$ and every element x belonging to $\mathrm{G}^{*}$ can be uniquely expressed as $x=g_{1} g_{2} \ldots g_{n}, g_{i} \in G_{i}$.
(iii) $\mathrm{G}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is normal in $\mathrm{G}^{*}$ and if $\mathrm{e}=\mathrm{g}_{1} \mathrm{~g}_{2} \ldots \mathrm{~g}_{\mathrm{n}}$, then each $\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}}=\mathrm{e}$.
(iv) $\mathrm{G}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is normal in $\mathrm{G}^{*}$ and $\mathrm{G}_{\mathrm{i}} \cap \mathrm{G}_{1} \ldots \mathrm{G}_{\mathrm{i}-1} \mathrm{G}_{\mathrm{i}+1} \ldots \mathrm{G}_{\mathrm{n}}=\{\mathrm{e}\}, 1 \leq \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{n}$.

### 4.6.2 Theorem.(Fundamental theorem of finitely generated abelian groups). Let

 G be a finitely generated abelian group. Then G can be decomposed as a direct sum of a finite number of cyclic groups $C_{i}$ i.e. $G=C_{1} \oplus C_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus C_{t}$ where either all $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{i}}$ 's are infinite or for some j less then $\mathrm{k}, \mathrm{C}_{1}, \mathrm{C}_{2}, \ldots \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{j}}$ are of order $m_{1}, m_{2}, \ldots m_{j}$ respectively, with $m_{1}\left|m_{2}\right| \ldots \mid m_{j}$ and rest of $C_{i}$ 's are infinite.Proof. Let $\left\{a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{t}\right\}$ be the smallest generating set for $G$. If $t=1$, then $G$ is itself a cyclic group and the theorem is trivially true. Let $\mathrm{t}>1$ and suppose that the result holds for all finitely generated abelian groups having order less then $t$. Let us consider a generating set $\left\{a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{t}\right\}$ of element of $G$ with the property that, for all integers $\mathrm{x}_{1}, \mathrm{x}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{t}}$, the equation

$$
x_{1} a_{1}+x_{2} a_{2}+\ldots+x_{t} a_{t}=0
$$

implies that

$$
\mathrm{x}_{1}=0, \mathrm{x}_{2}=0, \ldots, \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{t}}=0 .
$$

But this condition implies that every element in $G$ has unique representation of the form

$$
\mathrm{g}=\mathrm{x}_{1} \mathrm{a}_{1}+\mathrm{x}_{2} \mathrm{a}_{2}+\ldots+\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{t}} \mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{t}}, \mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}} \in \mathrm{Z} .
$$

Thus by Note 4.6.1,

$$
\mathrm{G}=\mathrm{C}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{C}_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{t}}
$$

where $C_{i}=<a_{i}>$ is cyclic group generated by $a_{i}, 1 \leq i \leq t$. By our choice on element of generated set each $C_{i}$ is infinite set (because if $C_{i}$ is of finite order say $r_{i}$, then $r_{i} a_{i}=0$ ). Hence in this case $G$ is direct sum of finite number of infinite cyclic group.

Now suppose that that $G$ has no generating set of $t$ elements with the property that $x_{1} a_{1}+x_{2} a_{2}+\ldots+x_{t} a_{t}=0 \Rightarrow x_{1}=0, x_{2}=0, \ldots, x_{t}=0$. Then, given any generating set $\left\{a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{t}\right\}$ of $G$, there exist integers $x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{t}$ not all zero such that

$$
x_{1} a_{1}+x_{2} a_{2}+\ldots+x_{t} a_{t}=0
$$

As $x_{1} a_{1}+x_{2} a_{2}+\ldots+x_{t} a_{t}=0$ implies that $-x_{1} a_{1}-x_{2} a_{2}-\ldots-x_{t} a_{t}=0$, therefore, with out loss of generality we can assume that $\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}}>0$ for at least one i. Consider all possible generating sets of $G$ containing $t$ elements with the
property that $x_{1} a_{1}+x_{2} a_{2}+\ldots+x_{t} a_{t}=0$ implies that at least one of $x_{i}>0$. Let $X$ is the set of all such $\left(x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots x_{t}\right) t$-tuples. Further let $m_{1}$ be the least positive integers that occurring in the set $t$-tuples of set X . With out loss of generality we can take $m_{1}$ to be at first component of that t-tuple $\left(a_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{t}\right)$
i.e. $m_{1} a_{1}+x_{2} a_{2}+\ldots+x_{t} a_{t}=0$

By division algorithm, we can write, $\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{i}}=\mathrm{q}_{\mathrm{i}} \mathrm{m}_{1}+\mathrm{s}_{\mathrm{i}}$, where $0 \leq \mathrm{s}_{\mathrm{i}}<\mathrm{m}_{1}$. Hence (1) becomes,
$m_{1} b_{1}+s_{2} a_{2}+\ldots+s_{t} a_{t}=0$, where $b_{1}=a_{1}+q_{2} a_{2}+\ldots+q_{t} a_{t}$. Now if $b_{1}=0$, then $a_{1}=-q_{2} a_{2}-\ldots-q_{t} a_{t}$. But then $G$ has a generator set containing less then t elements, a contradiction to the assumption that the smallest generator set of $G$ contains $t$ elements. Hence $b_{1} \neq 0$. Since $a_{1}=-b_{1}-$ $q_{2} a_{2}-\ldots-q_{t} a_{t}$, therefore, $\left\{b_{1}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{n}\right\}$ is also a generator of $G$. But then by the minimality of $m_{1}, m_{1} b_{1}+s_{2} a_{2}+\ldots+s_{t} a_{t}=0 \Rightarrow s_{i}=0$ for all i. $2 \leq i \leq t$. Hence $\mathrm{m}_{1} \mathrm{~b}_{1}=0$. Let $\mathrm{C}_{1}=\left\langle\mathrm{b}_{1}\right\rangle$. Since $\mathrm{m}_{1}$ is the least positive integer such that $m_{1} b_{1}=0$, therefore, order of $C_{1}=m_{1}$.

Let $G_{1}$ be the subgroup generated by $\left\{a_{2}, a_{3}, \ldots, a_{t}\right\}$. We claim that $G=C_{1} \oplus \mathrm{G}_{1}$. For it, it is sufficient to show that $\mathrm{C}_{1} \cap \mathrm{G}_{1}=\{0\}$. Let $d \in C_{1} \cap G_{1}$. Then $d=x_{1} b_{1}, 0 \leq x_{1}<m_{1}$ and $d=x_{2} a_{2}+\ldots+x_{t} a_{t}$. Equivalently, $\mathrm{x}_{1} \mathrm{~b}_{1}+\left(-\mathrm{x}_{2}\right) \mathrm{a}_{2}+\ldots+\left(-\mathrm{x}_{\mathrm{t}}\right) \mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{t}}=0$. Again by the minimal property of $\mathrm{m}_{1}, \mathrm{x}_{1}=0$. Hence $\mathrm{C}_{1} \cap \mathrm{G}_{1}=\{0\}$.

Now $G_{1}$ is generated by set $\left\{a_{2}, a_{2}, \ldots, a_{t}\right\}$ of $t-1$ elements. It is the smallest order set which generates $G_{1}$ (because if $G_{1}$ is generated by less then $\mathrm{t}-1$ elements then G can be generated by a set containing $\mathrm{t}-1$ elements, a contradiction to the assumption that the smallest generator of G contains $t$ elements). Hence by induction hypothesis,

$$
\mathrm{G}_{1}=\mathrm{C}_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{t}}
$$

where $\mathrm{C}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{k}}$ are cyclic subgroup of G that are either all are infinite or, for some $\mathrm{j} \leq \mathrm{t}, \mathrm{C}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{j}}$ are finite cyclic group of order $\mathrm{m}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{~m}_{\mathrm{j}}$ respectively such that $\mathrm{m}_{2}\left|\mathrm{~m}_{3}\right| \ldots \mid \mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{j}}$, and $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{i}}$ are infinite for $\mathrm{i}>\mathrm{j}$.

Let $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{i}}=\left[\mathrm{b}_{\mathrm{i}}\right], \mathrm{i}=2,3, \ldots, \mathrm{k}$ and suppose that $\mathrm{C}_{2}$ is of order $\mathrm{m}_{2}$. Then $\left\{b_{1}, b_{2}, \ldots, b_{t}\right\}$ is the generating set of $G$ and $m_{1} b_{1}+m_{2} b_{2}+0 . b_{3}+\ldots+$ $0 . b_{k}=0$. By repeating the argument given for (1), we conclude that $\mathrm{m}_{1} \mid \mathrm{m}_{2}$. This completes the proof of the theorem.
4.6.3 Theorem. Let $G$ be a finite abelian group. Then there exist a unique list of integers $m_{1}, m_{2}, \ldots, m_{t}\left(\right.$ all $\left.m_{i}>1\right)$ such that order of $G$ is $m_{1} m_{2} \ldots m_{t}$ and $G$ $=\mathrm{C}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{C}_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{t}}$ where $\mathrm{C}_{1}, \mathrm{C}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{t}}$ are cyclic groups of order $\mathrm{m}_{1}, \mathrm{~m}_{2}, \ldots$, $\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{k}}$ respectively. Consequently, $\mathrm{G} \cong \mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{m}_{1}} \oplus \mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{m}_{1}} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{t}}}$.

Proof. By theorem 4.6.2, $\mathrm{G}=\mathrm{C}_{1} \oplus \mathrm{C}_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{t}}$ where $\mathrm{C}_{1}, \mathrm{C}_{2}, \ldots, \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{t}}$ are cyclic groups of order $m_{1}, m_{2}, \ldots, m_{t}$ respectively, such that $m_{1}\left|m_{2}\right| \ldots \mid m_{t}$. As order of $S \times T=$ order of $S \times$ order of $T$, therefore, order of $G=m_{1} m_{2} \ldots m_{t}$. Since a cyclic group of order m is isomorphic to $\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{m}}$ group of integers under the operation addition mod m , therefore,

$$
\mathrm{G} \cong \mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{m}_{1}} \oplus \mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{m}_{1}} \oplus \ldots \oplus \mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{t}}} .
$$

We claim that $m_{1}, m_{2}, \ldots, m_{t}$ are unique. For it, let there exists $n_{1}, n_{2}, \ldots, n_{r}$ such that $n_{1}\left|n_{2}\right| \ldots \mid n_{r}$ and $G=D_{1} \oplus D_{2} \oplus \ldots \oplus D_{r}$ where $D_{j}$ are cyclic groups of order $n_{j}$. Since $D_{r}$ has an element of order $n_{r}$ and largest order of element of G is $\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{t}}$, therefore, $\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{r}} \leq \mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{t}}$. By the same argument, $\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{t}} \leq \mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{r}}$. Hence $\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{t}}=\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{r}}$.

Now consider $\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{t}-1} \mathrm{G}=\left\{\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{t}-1} \mathrm{~g} \mid \mathrm{g} \in \mathrm{G}\right\}$. Then by two decomposition of G we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{t}-1} \mathrm{G} & =\left(\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{t}-1} \mathrm{C}_{1}\right) \oplus\left(\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{t}-1} \mathrm{C}_{2}\right) \oplus \ldots \oplus\left(\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{t}-1} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{t}}\right) \\
& =\left(\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{t}-1} \mathrm{D}_{1}\right) \oplus\left(\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{t}-1} \mathrm{D}_{2}\right) \oplus \ldots \oplus\left(\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{t}-1} \mathrm{D}_{\mathrm{r}-1}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

As $m_{i} \mid m_{t-1}\left(\right.$ it means $m_{i}$ divides $m_{t-1}$ )for all $\mathrm{i}, 1 \leq \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{t}-1$, therefore, for all such i, $m_{t-1} C_{i}=\{0\}$. Hence order of $\left(m_{t-1} G\right)$ i.e. $\left|m_{t-1} G\right|=\left|\left(m_{t-1} C_{t}\right)\right|=\left|\left(m_{t-1} D_{r}\right)\right|$. Thus $\left|\left(m_{t-1} D_{j}\right)\right|=1$ for $j=1,2, \ldots, r-1$. Hence $n_{r-1} \mid m_{t-1}$. Repeating the process by taking $m_{r-1} G$, we get that $m_{t-1} \mid n_{r-1}$. Hence $m_{t-1}=n_{r-1}$. Continuing this process we get that $m_{i}=n_{i}$ for $i=t, t-1, t-2, \ldots$. But $m_{1} m_{2} \ldots m_{t}=|G|=n_{1} n_{2} \ldots n_{r}$, therefore, $\mathrm{r}=\mathrm{t}$ and $\mathrm{m}_{\mathrm{i}}=\mathrm{n}_{\mathrm{i}}$ for all $\mathrm{i}, 1 \leq \mathrm{i} \leq \mathrm{k}$.
4.6.3 Corollary. Let $A$ be a finitely generated abelian group. Then A $\cong Z^{\mathrm{S}} \oplus \frac{\mathrm{Z}}{\mathrm{a}_{1} \mathrm{Z}} \oplus \ldots \oplus \frac{\mathrm{Z}}{\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{r}} \mathrm{Z}}$, where s is a nonnegative integer and $\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{i}}$ are nonzero non-unit in $Z$, such that $a_{1}\left|a_{2}\right| \ldots \mid a_{r}$. Further decomposition of $A$ shown above is unique in the sense that $\mathrm{a}_{\mathrm{i}}$ are unique.
4.6.4 Example. The abelian group generated by $\mathrm{x}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{x}_{2}$ subjected to the condition $2 \mathrm{x}_{1}=0,3 \mathrm{x}_{2}=0$ is isomorphic to $\mathrm{Z} /<6>$ because the matrix of these equation is $\left[\begin{array}{ll}2 & 0 \\ 0 & 3\end{array}\right]$ has the smith normal form $\left[\begin{array}{ll}1 & 0 \\ 0 & 6\end{array}\right]$

### 4.7 KEY WORDS

Uniform modules, Noether Lashkar, wedderburn artin, finitely generated.

### 4.8 SUMMARY

In this chapter, we study about Weddernburn theorem, uniform modules, primary modules, noether-laskar theorem, smith normal theorem and finitely generated abelian groups. Some more results on noetherian and artinian modules and rings are also studied.

### 4.9 SELF ASSESMENT QUESTIONS

(1) Let $R$ be an artinain rings. Then show that the following sets are ideals and are equal:
(i) $\mathrm{N}=$ sum of nil ideals, (ii) $\mathrm{U}=$ some of nilpotent ideals, (iii) Sum of all nilpotent right ideals.
(2) Show that every uniform module is a primary module but converse may not be true
(3) Obtain the normal smith form of the matrix $\left[\begin{array}{ccc}-\mathrm{x} & 4 & -2 \\ -3 & 8-\mathrm{x} & 3 \\ 4 & -8 & -2-\mathrm{x}\end{array}\right]$ over the ring $\mathrm{Q}[\mathrm{x}]$.
(4) Find the abelian group generated by $\left\{x_{1}, x_{2}, x_{3}\right\}$ subjected to the conditions $5 \mathrm{x}_{1}+9 \mathrm{x}_{2}+5 \mathrm{x}_{3}=0,2 \mathrm{x}_{1}+4 \mathrm{x}_{2}+2 \mathrm{x}_{3}=0, \mathrm{x}_{1}+\mathrm{x}_{2}-3 \mathrm{x}_{3}=0$

### 4.10 SUGGESTED READINGS

(1) Modern Algebra; SURJEET SINGH and QAZI ZAMEERUDDIN, Vikas Publications.
(2) Basic Abstract Algebra; P.B. BHATTARAYA, S.K.JAIN, S.R. NAGPAUL, Cambridge University Press, Second Edition.

